



Installation and Maintenance — BS2000/OSD
15.0



Computer Associates™

This documentation and related computer software program (hereinafter referred to as the "Documentation") is for the end user's informational purposes only and is subject to change or withdrawal by Computer Associates International, Inc. ("CA") at any time.

This documentation may not be copied, transferred, reproduced, disclosed or duplicated, in whole or in part, without the prior written consent of CA. This documentation is proprietary information of CA and protected by the copyright laws of the United States and international treaties.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, licensed users may print a reasonable number of copies of this documentation for their own internal use, provided that all CA copyright notices and legends are affixed to each reproduced copy. Only authorized employees, consultants, or agents of the user who are bound by the confidentiality provisions of the license for the software are permitted to have access to such copies.

This right to print copies is limited to the period during which the license for the product remains in full force and effect. Should the license terminate for any reason, it shall be the user's responsibility to return to CA the reproduced copies or to certify to CA that same have been destroyed.

To the extent permitted by applicable law, CA provides this documentation "as is" without warranty of any kind, including without limitation, any implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or noninfringement. In no event will CA be liable to the end user or any third party for any loss or damage, direct or indirect, from the use of this documentation, including without limitation, lost profits, business interruption, goodwill, or lost data, even if CA is expressly advised of such loss or damage.

The use of any product referenced in this documentation and this documentation is governed by the end user's applicable license agreement.

The manufacturer of this documentation is Computer Associates International, Inc.

Provided with "Restricted Rights" as set forth in 48 C.F.R. Section 12.212, 48 C.F.R. Sections 52.227-19(c)(1) and (2) or DFARS Section 252.227-7013(c)(1)(ii) or applicable successor provisions.

Second Edition, October 2001

© 2001 Computer Associates International, Inc.
All rights reserved.

All trademarks, trade names, service marks, and logos referenced herein belong to their respective companies.

Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction	1-1
1.1 Product Distribution and Installation Materials	1-3
1.1.1 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Base Installation Only	1-3
1.1.2 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Tools Base Installation Only	1-3
1.1.3 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Maintenance Installation Only	1-4
1.1.4 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance Installation Only	1-5
1.2 Installation Methodology	1-6
1.2.1 Product Passwords	1-6
1.2.2 Customizing JCL for the CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools Base Installation	1-6
1.2.3 Loading Source and Object Code	1-6
Chapter 2. System Requirements	2-1
2.1 Tape Drive Requirements	2-3
2.2 Disk Space Requirements	2-4
Chapter 3. CA-IDMS Installation Steps	3-1
3.1 Overview of Installation Steps	3-4
3.2 Step 1. Review Cover Letters or PIBs	3-5
3.3 Step 2. Review System Requirements	3-7
3.4 Step 3. Offload the Installation Files from Tape	3-8
3.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB	3-9
3.5.1 Customize Installation JCL	3-9
3.5.2 CAIIJMP Input Parameters	3-9
3.5.3 CAIIJMP Input Parameters Rules	3-10
3.5.4 CAIIJMP Parameter Descriptions	3-10
3.5.5 Sample CAIIJMP Input from Boot Library	3-10
3.6 Step 5. Execute CAIIJMP to generate the install JCL	3-18
3.7 Step 6. Execute the Installation JCL	3-19
3.8 Step 7. Modify System 90	3-21
3.8.1 Step 8. Copy System 90	3-21
3.9 Step 9. Verify the System is Installed	3-22
3.10 Step 10. Offload the CCI.LIB from Tape	3-25
3.11 Step 11. Offload the INTBLOAD.LOADLIB from Tape	3-26
Chapter 4. CA-IDMS Tools Installation Steps	4-1
4.1 Overview of Installation Steps	4-4
4.2 Step 1. Review Cover Letters and PIBs	4-6
4.3 Step 2. System Requirements	4-7
4.4 Step 3. Offload the Installation Files from Tape	4-8
4.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB	4-9
4.5.1 Customize Installation JCL	4-9
4.5.2 CAIIJMP Input Parameters	4-9
4.5.3 CAIIJMP Input Parameter Rules	4-10
4.5.4 CAIIJMP Parameter Descriptions	4-10
4.5.5 Sample CAIIJMP Input from Boot Library	4-11
4.6 Step 5. Execute CAIIJMP to Generate the Install JCL	4-19

4.7 Step 6. Execute the Installation JCL	4-20
4.7.1 Job 1	4-20
4.7.2 Job 2	4-20
4.7.3 Job 3	4-20
4.7.3.1 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator	4-21
4.7.3.2 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor	4-21
4.7.3.3 CA-IDMS/DML Online	4-21
4.7.3.4 CA-IDMS/DC SORT	4-22
4.7.3.5 CA-IDMS/DC-SORT Customization	4-23
4.7.4 Job 4	4-24
4.7.5 Job 5	4-24
4.7.6 Job 6	4-24
4.7.7 Job 7	4-24
4.8 Steps 7 and 8. Install User Exits and Update the Dictionaries	4-25
4.8.1 USFUEXTX	4-25
4.8.1.1 How to Assemble USFUEXTX	4-25
4.8.2 RHDCUXIT	4-25
4.8.2.1 How to Assemble RHDCUXIT	4-26
4.8.3 Update the Dictionaries	4-27
4.9 Step 9. Modify Your Start-Up JCL: the FILE Procedure	4-29
4.10 Step 10. Cycle Your CA-IDMS System	4-30
4.11 Step 11. Install Default JCL	4-31
4.12 Step 12. Add Another SASO Document (Optional)	4-32
4.13 Step 13. Recover Library Space	4-33
Chapter 5. Usage Notes and Maintenance Guide for CA-IDMS Tools	5-1
5.1 General Notes	5-3
5.2 Additional SYSGEN Steps	5-5
5.2.1 Modify the SYSGEN SYSTEM Statement	5-5
5.2.2 Modify Storage Requirements	5-5
5.2.3 Modify By-task Statistics Records	5-5
5.2.4 Modify the SYSGEN ADSO Statement	5-6
5.2.5 Register Programs	5-6
5.2.6 Modify the Task Code	5-6
5.2.7 Implement Security for Dictionary Migrator and DBX	5-7
5.3 DBMSMOD Utility	5-8
5.4 DBMSMOD and Library Organization	5-12
Chapter 6. Maintenance Process	6-1
6.1 Release 15.0 and above Product Requirements	6-3
6.2 Required Installation Materials	6-4
6.2.1 Maintenance Installation Tape	6-4
6.2.2 BS2000 Product Requirements	6-4
6.3 Library Types and LMS Member Types	6-5
6.4 Maintenance Methodology	6-6
6.4.1 Meaning of Member Versions	6-6
6.4.1.1 All CA-IDMS and DBA Libraries	6-6
6.4.1.2 All CA-IDMS Tools and DBA Libraries	6-7
6.4.1.3 CA-IDMS Load Library Only	6-7
6.4.1.4 CA-IDMS Tools Load Library Only	6-7
6.4.1.5 CA-IDMS APAR Library Only	6-7

6.4.1.6 CA-IDMS Tools APAR Library Only	6-8
6.5 Maintenance Phases	6-9
6.5.1 INIT	6-9
6.5.2 RECEIVE	6-9
6.5.3 REJECT	6-9
6.5.4 APPLY	6-9
6.5.5 RESTORE	6-10
6.5.6 ACCEPT	6-10
6.6 Maintenance Requirements Checklist	6-11
6.7 CA-IDMS Maintenance Installation Steps	6-12
6.7.1 Overview of Installation Steps	6-12
6.7.2 Steps 1 and 2. System Requirements	6-12
6.7.3 Step 3. Offload all Files from Tape	6-13
6.7.4 Step 4. ACCEPT the Previous Maintenance	6-13
6.7.5 Step 5. Adapt the base IJMP Procedure File	6-14
6.7.6 Step 6. Execute Procedure P-MAINT	6-14
6.7.7 Step 7. Offload the CCI.LIB From Tape	6-18
6.8 CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance Installation Steps	6-19
6.8.1 Overview of Installation Steps	6-19
6.8.2 Steps 1 and 2. System Requirements	6-19
6.8.3 Step 3. Offload all Files from Tape	6-20
6.8.4 Step 4. ACCEPT the Previous Maintenance	6-20
6.8.5 Step 5. Adapt the Base IJMP Procedure File	6-21
6.8.6 Step 6. Execute Procedure P-MAINT	6-21
6.9 Remarks for CA-IDMS Tools	6-25
6.9.1 P-MAINT Maintenance Procedure	6-25
6.9.2 Special members	6-25
Appendix A. CA-IDMS Product List	A-1
A.1 Overview	A-3
A.2 CA-IDMS Product List	A-4
Appendix B. CA-IDMS Tools Product List	B-1
B.1 Overview	B-3
B.2 Product List	B-4
Appendix C. CA-IDMS CAIIJMP Parameter List	C-1
C.1 CA-IDMS CAIIJMP Parameter List	C-3
Appendix D. CA-IDMS Tools CAIIJMP Parameter List	D-1
D.1 Overview	D-3
D.2 CA-IDMS Tools CAIIJMP Parameters	D-4
Appendix E. Messages and Codes	E-1
E.1 Overview	E-3
E.2 Installation Job Return Codes	E-4
E.2.1 CAIIJMP Messages	E-4
E.2.2 CAIIJMP Return Codes	E-4
E.2.3 CAIIPDS Messages	E-4
E.2.4 CAIIPDS Return Codes	E-4

Appendix F. CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options	.....	F-1
F.1 Overview	.....	F-3
F.2 CA-IDMS/ADS Alive Runtime Parameters	.....	F-4
F.3 CA-IDMS/Database Extractor Runtime Parameters	.....	F-6
F.4 CA-IDMS/DBIO Runtime Parameters	.....	F-8
F.5 CA-IDMS/DC SORT Runtime Parameters	.....	F-10
F.6 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Runtime Parameters	.....	F-11
F.7 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Assistant Runtime Parameters	.....	F-28
F.8 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor Runtime Parameters	.....	F-29
F.9 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Query Facility	.....	F-31
F.10 CA-IDMS/DML Online Runtime Parameters	.....	F-32
F.11 CA-IDMS/Enforcer Runtime Parameters	.....	F-44
F.12 CA-IDMS/Masterkey Runtime Parameters	.....	F-46
F.13 CA-IDMS/Online Log Display	.....	F-47
F.14 CA-IDMS/SASO Runtime Parameters	.....	F-48
Appendix G. CA-IDMS/DMLO Security and Access Considerations	.....	G-1
G.1 Overview	.....	G-3
G.2 CA-IDMS/DMLO Security	.....	G-4
G.2.1 Security Levels and Access by Usage Mode	.....	G-4
G.2.1.1 Level 1 Security	.....	G-4
G.2.1.2 Level 2 Security	.....	G-4
G.2.1.3 Level 3 Security	.....	G-4
G.2.2 Access by Usage Mode	.....	G-5
G.2.3 Defining Security and Limiting Access by Usage Mode	.....	G-6
G.2.4 Defining the Security Level	.....	G-6
G.2.5 Bypassing Security	.....	G-6
G.2.6 Adding a User Id and Password to the Dictionary	.....	G-6
G.2.7 Registering the Subschema to Users	.....	G-7
G.2.8 Restricting Usage Mode Access at a Global Level	.....	G-7
G.2.9 Restricting Usage Mode Access at the User Level	.....	G-7
G.2.10 Central CA-IDMS Security	.....	G-8
Appendix H. JCL Table	.....	H-1
H.1 Overview	.....	H-3
H.2 JCL Table by Product	.....	H-4
Appendix I. DML/Online Batch CLIST Processing Instructions	.....	I-1
I.1 Overview	.....	I-3
I.2 USDBCLST	.....	I-4
Appendix J. TOOLSECR List	.....	J-1
J.1 TOOLSECR	.....	J-3
Index	.....	X-1

Chapter 1. Introduction

1.1 Product Distribution and Installation Materials	1-3
1.1.1 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Base Installation Only	1-3
1.1.2 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Tools Base Installation Only	1-3
1.1.3 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Maintenance Installation Only	1-4
1.1.4 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance Installation Only . .	1-5
1.2 Installation Methodology	1-6
1.2.1 Product Passwords	1-6
1.2.2 Customizing JCL for the CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools Base Installation	1-6
1.2.3 Loading Source and Object Code	1-6

1.1 Product Distribution and Installation Materials

The machine readable program materials required for installation are distributed on a multiple file tape. The tape format for the CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools Base and/or Maintenance installation is an IBM-compatible cartridge. The format of the tapes for both installations requires the standard BS2000 utility ARCHIVE.

1.1.1 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Base Installation Only

The prefix for the CA-IDMS installation (marked as prefixidms) is the volume serial number, which is F0GJsB. The F0 represents Release 15.0; GJ is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS; s is the service pack; B indicates a base tape.

- A boot library named prefixidms.BOOTLIB. This is a PLAM library with BS2000 procedures and also CA programs CAIIJMP and CAIIPDS which provide the bootstrap mechanism for the installation process.
- A prototype JCL file named prefixidms.IJCLFILE.DISK is used by the CAIIJMP program to produce tailored BS2000 installation JCL.
- An APAR file named prefixidms.APARFILE containing APARs that were applied on the load modules.
- A load module file named prefixidms.LOADFILE containing all load modules for all CA-IDMS products.
- A source file named prefixidms.SRCFILE containing all sources, macros and JCL for all the CA-IDMS products.
- The input to the CA-IDMS dictionary load program, IDMSDIRL named prefixidms.DIRLFILE. IDMSDIRL loads the SYSDIRL segment during the installation process.
- A PLAM library named prefixidms.MIGRLIB containing the programs for the CA-IDMS/DB conversion process.
- A PLAM library named CCI.LIB containing all programs, BS2000 procedures and sources for the CA-IDMS/SERVER product.
- A PLAM library named INTBLOAD.LOADLIB containing the load module IDMSSBS2 for the streamlined batch to CV Interface.

1.1.2 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Tools Base Installation Only

The prefix for the CA-IDMS Tools installation (marked as prefixtools) is F0WIIsB. F0 represents Release 15.0; WI is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS/Tools; s is the service pack; B indicates a base tape.

- A boot library named prefixtools.BOOTLIB. This is a PLAM library with BS2000 procedures and also CA programs CAIIJMP and CAIIPDS which provide the bootstrap mechanism for the installation process.

- A prototype JCL file named prefixtools.IJCLFILE.DISK used by the CAIJMP program to produce tailored BS2000 installation JCL.
- An APAR file named prefixtools.APARFILE containing APARs that were applied on the load modules for all CA-IDMS Tools products.
- A load module file named prefixtools.LODFILE containing all load modules for all CA-IDMS Tools products.
- A source file named prefixtools.SRCFILE containing all sources, macros and JCL for all the CA-IDMS Tools products.
- A link file named prefixtools.LNKFILE containing all Link members that have to be linked at your site.
- A demo library named prefixtools.DEMOLIB. This is a PLAM library containing the demo employee database files, the demo ARCHIVE.JOURNAL file (used to demonstrate the JNLA: Journal Analyzer), the demo ARCHIVE.LOG file (used to demonstrate LOGA: Log Analyzer) and 3 demo SASO files (used to demonstrate SASO). These files can only be used in the demo after execution of the UNLDEMO procedure. This library contains also the employee subschema EMPSS01, a demo DMCL, EMPDMCL, and a demo DB table, R150DBTB. Mostly this demo library is accessed by the /ADD-FILE-LINK command with LINK= CDMSLIBA (See the demo steps in the JCL of your dbms.srclib).

Note: Always execute / REMOVE-FILE-LINK of CDMSLIBA when you are finished with this demo library.

- A file named prefixtools.SASO.DBTEXT contains SP&G (Standards, Procedures and Guidelines) for the SASO product.
- A file named prefixtools.ENFORCER.DBTEXT contains the Enforcer prototype naming templates for the ENFORCER product.

1.1.3 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Maintenance Installation Only

- The prefix for the CA-IDMS Maintenance installation (marked as mntpref) is F0GJsM. F0 represents Release 15.0; GJ is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS; s is the service pack; M indicates a maintenance tape.
- A boot library named mntpref.BOOTLIB. This is a PLAM library which contains the maintenance installation procedures and a CA program CAIIPDS.
- An APAR file named mntpref.APARFILE containing APARs that were applied on the maintenance load modules.
- A load module file named mntpref.LOADFILE containing all maintenance load modules since a previous maintenance installation or base installation. The load modules get a new version number.
- A source file named mntpref.SRCFILE containing all maintenance sources, macros and JCL.

For more information see, 6.7, “CA-IDMS Maintenance Installation Steps” on page 6-12.

1.1.4 Files Applying to the CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance Installation Only

- The prefix for the CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance installation (marked as mntpref) is F0WIIsM. F0 represents Release 15.0; WI is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS Tools; s is the service pack; M indicates a maintenance tape.
- A boot library named mntpref.BOOTLIB. This is a PLAM library which contains the maintenance installation procedures and a CA program CAIPDS.
- An APAR file named mntpref.APAPFILE containing APARs that were applied on the maintenance load modules.
- A load module file named mntpref.LODFILE containing all maintenance load modules since a previous maintenance installation or base installation. The load modules get a new version number.
- A source file named mntpref.SRCFILE containing all maintenance sources, macros and JCL.
- A Link file named mntpref.LNKFILE containing link members.

For more information see, 6.8, “CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance Installation Steps” on page 6-19.

1.2 Installation Methodology

The CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools installation uses Computer Associates installation utilities and the BS2000 utility ARCHIVE.

The installation process discussed here is a base install for both.

1.2.1 Product Passwords

The installation process allows you to install any number of CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools products in a single integrated installation session. Product passwords are required for the installation of most products. The installation package includes the passwords for your CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools product profile.

1.2.2 Customizing JCL for the CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools Base Installation

A JCL generation program, CAIIJMP, is used to generate customized JCL for the installation process. All JCL required by the installation process is generated by CAIIJMP. The JCL is customized by user-defined parameter values which indicate the products you are installing and define your site environment.

For a complete listing of CAIIJMP parameters, see Appendix C, “CA-IDMS CAIIJMP Parameter List” on page C-1 or Appendix D, “CA-IDMS Tools CAIIJMP Parameter List” on page D-1.

Note: There are several new CAIIJMP parameters. Refer to the sample CAIIJMP procedure for more details.

1.2.3 Loading Source and Object Code

The product code on the installation files for CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools is compressed and encrypted. You can only download the code by using the CAIIPDS program. CAIIPDS loads the required source, APARS, link and object code from the relevant files into macro, source, APAR, link and load libraries (PLAM libraries).

Chapter 2. System Requirements

2.1 Tape Drive Requirements	2-3
2.2 Disk Space Requirements	2-4

2.1 Tape Drive Requirements

The CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools product line are distributed on an IBM-compatible cartridge. Some of the CA-IDMS installation jobs require scratch tapes for back-up of the database files. Each installation requires one tape drive.

2.2 Disk Space Requirements

The installation of the default configuration with all products installed requires:

- for CA-IDMS about 24,700 PAM pages for installation files, about 24,000 PAM pages for libraries and about 35,000 PAM pages for the database files.
- for CA-IDMS Tools about 16,500 PAM pages for installation files, about 15,000 PAM pages for libraries and about 20,000 PAM pages for the database files.

Chapter 3. CA-IDMS Installation Steps

3.1 Overview of Installation Steps	3-4
3.2 Step 1. Review Cover Letters or PIBs	3-5
3.3 Step 2. Review System Requirements	3-7
3.4 Step 3. Offload the Installation Files from Tape	3-8
3.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB	3-9
3.5.1 Customize Installation JCL	3-9
3.5.2 CAIIJMP Input Parameters	3-9
3.5.3 CAIIJMP Input Parameters Rules	3-10
3.5.4 CAIIJMP Parameter Descriptions	3-10
3.5.5 Sample CAIIJMP Input from Boot Library	3-10
3.6 Step 5. Execute CAIIJMP to generate the install JCL	3-18
3.7 Step 6. Execute the Installation JCL	3-19
3.8 Step 7. Modify System 90	3-21
3.8.1 Step 8. Copy System 90	3-21
3.9 Step 9. Verify the System is Installed	3-22
3.10 Step 10. Offload the CCI.LIB from Tape	3-25
3.11 Step 11. Offload the INTBLOAD.LOADLIB from Tape	3-26

This chapter describes the steps required to install the CA-IDMS product line on a BS2000 system. Review the first part of this chapter 3.1, “Overview of Installation Steps” on page 3-4, before beginning the CA-IDMS installation process.

3.1 Overview of Installation Steps

The following list summarizes the steps involved in the CA-IDMS installation process. Review this list before you begin the installation process.

The remainder of this chapter describes each installation step in detail.

- **Step 1**

Review the installation package cover letter and any PIBs included with the installation package for pertinent installation information.

- **Step 2**

Review the CA-IDMS system requirements. Be sure all requirements are met before beginning the install process.

- **Step 3**

Load the boot library from the install tape to a disk.

- **Step 4**

Modify member CAIIJMP of the boot library.

- **Step 5**

Execute CAIIJMP to generate the customized installation JCL.

- **Step 6**

Execute the installation JCL generated by CAIIJMP.

- **Step 7**

Modify System 90.

- **Step 8**

Copy System 90.

- **Step 9**

Verify the system is installed.

- **Step 10**

Offload the CCI.LIB from the install tape to disk.

- **Step 11**

Offload the INTBLOAD.LOADLIB from Tape

3.2 Step 1. Review Cover Letters or PIBs

Review any cover letters or PIBs in your installation package. Review this information for any additional steps or site-relevant information required to complete your CA-IDMS installation.

Additionally, review the topics below before installing CA-IDMS. These topics may have an impact on the parameters you select when installing CA-IDMS.

■ Optional APARs

In Release 12.0 optional functionality for your system was activated by applying optional APARs using the APPLYAPA (APPLYAPB for the Tools) procedure after the install was complete.

In Release 14.0 and above, some APARs must still be applied in this manner, but most optional functionality is activated by the manner in which RHDCOPTF is assembled.

Two members will be added to your DBA source library.

- **RHDCOPTF, type S**

You need to adapt this source member when activating one or more optional APARs. You can adapt the member in EDT mode when running the IDMSMOD function RHDCOPTF.

- **RHDCOPTF, type J**

You need this procedure to compile the RHDCOPTF source and linkedit the module. The RHDCOPTF load module is saved in the DBA load library.

You must call this procedure by using the IDMSMOD function RHDCOPTF.

For more information on RHDCOPTF, refer to *CA-IDMS Features Guide 15.0*.

■ Dynamic or static PDE support

You can install CA-IDMS to use either dynamic allocation of program definition elements (PDEs) during system runtime or static allocation of PDEs during system startup:

- Dynamic allocation of program definition elements (PDEs) during system runtime

Dynamic allocation of PDEs makes it possible to load PDEs for maps, dialogs and tables in XA storage. The PDETYP parameter of CAIJMP controls this option. A value of DYNAMIC directs the system to allocate PDEs for Computer Associates supplied maps, dialogs and tables dynamically during runtime. DYNAMIC is the default.

- Static allocation of PDEs during system startup

A value of STATIC directs the system to build static PDEs for Computer Associates supplied maps, dialogs and tables during system startup.

■ CA-IDMS program list

The security features of CA-IDMS Release 15.0 and above may require you to explicitly secure Computer Associates supplied user mode programs, if you have elected to secure programs that issue database requests. During the installation of CA-IDMS, module DLODSECR is loaded in the source library. DLODSECR contains all Computer Associates supplied user mode programs which issue bind run units. You can issue this list to create syntax for program security definitions.

■ **CA-IDMS Tools considerations**

The CA-IDMS Tools (CA-IDMS/DMLO, CA-IDMS/ADS ALIVE, etc.) are delivered normally on the same tape and you install them after you complete the CA-IDMS base installation. The installation process for the CA-IDMS Tools is in the same format as the CA-IDMS base installation. For complete installation procedures for CA-IDMS Tools, see Chapter 4, “CA-IDMS Tools Installation Steps” on page 4-1. CA-IDMS Performance Monitor and CA-IDMS/PRESSPACK are included on the CA-IDMS base tape and are installed along with the CA-IDMS base products.

3.3 Step 2. Review System Requirements

Review the CA-IDMS system requirements in the *CA-IDMS Usage in the BS2000/OSD Environment* manual. Be sure that all system requirements are met before beginning the installation process.

3.4 Step 3. Offload the Installation Files from Tape

To begin the CA-IDMS installation process, offload the installation files from the tape to disk using the following procedure:

JCL (BS2000)

```
/ .UNLOAD  BEG-PROC LOG=NO,PAR=
/           YES(PROC-PAR=(
/             &UID=
/             ,&PREFIX=
/             ,&VOLUME=
/             ),ESC-CHAR='&')
/           ASS-SYSDTA TO=SYSCMD
/           REMARK ****
/           REMARK UNLOAD BASE INSTALLATION FILES USING ARCHIVE
/           REMARK ****
/           START-ARCHIVE
PARAM STREAM=YES,CATID=NO
F NA=($DBDC..&PREFIX.,RENAME=&UID..&PREFIX.)
I DIR=NONE,DEVICE=T-C4,FR=(&VOLUME),LIST=SYSOUT
END
/           EXIT-PROC
```

where:

- &PREFIX is the volume serial number, which is F0GJsB, for the CA-IDMS installation. F0 represents Release 15.0; GJ is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS; s is the service pack; B indicates a base tape.
- &VOLUME is the volume serial number of the tape.
- &UID is the user ID under which you install CA-IDMS.
- The boot library contains the programs CAIIPDS and CAIIJMP (type L members) and the prototype procedure CAIIJMP (type J member).

3.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB

The CA-IDMS installation JCL is customized for your site and generated by the CAIIJMP program. Input to CAIIJMP consists of parameters and parameter values which you supply to:

- Define the CA-IDMS products you install.
- Define your system environment where you install those products.

3.5.1 Customize Installation JCL

The type J member CAIIJMP of the boot library is a procedure to execute CAIIJMP to generate the installation JCL. Customize the CAIIJMP input parameter values in the procedure to conform to your product installation profile and your system environment.

3.5.2 CAIIJMP Input Parameters

The CAIIJMP member contains a default set of CAIIJMP input parameters and values. The parameter set is annotated to assist you in the parameter selection process. Follow the guidelines in the CAIIJMP member and update the parameter values to define the CA-IDMS products you install and to define your site specific system environment and naming conventions. In most cases, you can accept the default parameters.

Note: There are several new CAIIJMP parameters. Refer to the sample CAIIJMP procedure for more details.

Types of CAIIJMP parameters are:

- Product parameters — Define the CA-IDMS products you install.
- Password parameters — Define the required product passwords. Passwords are required for product installation. The passwords for your CA-IDMS product profile are included in your installation package.
- Global parameters — Define naming conventions and device conventions common to many parameters.
- Library parameters — Define the CA-IDMS and DBA libraries and any other libraries required by the CA-IDMS installation.
- Database parameters — Define the database files required by CA-IDMS.
- Operating System parameters — Define your operating system environment.
- Miscellaneous parameters — Define special product or site requirements.

3.5.3 CAIIJMP Input Parameters Rules

Follow these rules when coding CAIIJMP input parameters:

- The parameter name must start in column 1.
- The parameter value follows the parameter name. At least one blank must separate the parameter name and the parameter value.
- A parameter value may be up to 80 characters long.
- For long parameter values, leave the remainder of the line blank after the parameter name and use the next line to specify the parameter value.
- If the parameter value contains embedded blanks, you must enclose the entire parameter value in double quotation marks.
- If the parameter value itself contains quotation marks, use a single quotation mark for the embedded quotation mark and enclose the parameter value string in double quotation marks.
- You can specify comments on the same line as the parameter value by leaving one or more blanks after the parameter value.
- To place a comment on a separate line, place an asterisk in column one followed by the comment text.
- You must follow an asterisk by text on the same line. You can not insert a blank line by entering an asterisk followed by spaces. CAIIJMP interprets the next text read after an asterisk as a comment regardless of the line or column.
- If you do not specify a CAIIJMP parameter in your JCL, the default parameter will be used.

3.5.4 CAIIJMP Parameter Descriptions

For a complete listing of CAIIJMP parameters, see Appendix C, “CA-IDMS CAIIJMP Parameter List” on page C-1.

3.5.5 Sample CAIIJMP Input from Boot Library

Sample CAIIJMP input parameters from the boot library are provided below. This member is included for reference purposes only. The CAIIJMP member may change as new tapes are distributed. Products valid to install from one tape may not be valid to install from another tape. Additionally, changes may be made to the CAIIJMP input parameters. Always use the CAIIJMP member from the boot library from the tape you install.

JCL (BS2000)

```

/BEG-PROC LOG=COMMANDS,PAR=YES(PROC-PAR=
/      (
/          &PREF=
/              ,&PREFBOOT=F0GJ0B.
/              ,&VOL=F0GJ0B
/              ,&SUPPORT=DISK
/          ),ESC-CHAR='&')
/REMARK
/REMARK      ENTER INSTALLATION PREFIX (WITH ENDING '.') --> &PREF
/REMARK      ENTER INSTALLATION TAPE VOLUME NAME           --> &VOL
/REMARK      ENTER IJCL FILE SUPPORT (DISK/TAPE)         --> &SUPPORT
/REMARK
/          ASS-SYSDTA TO=*SYSCMD
/          ASS-SYSOPT TO=&VOL..JOB
/          ASS-SYSLST TO=&VOL..SYSLST.CAIJMP
/          SKIP-COM TO-LABEL=&SUPPORT
/.TAPE      REMARK : TAPE FILE PROCESSING
/          REMARK : NOT SUPPORTED
/.DISK      REMARK : DISK FILE PROCESSING
/          CRE-FILE F-NAME=&VOL..IJCLFILE.DISK,SUPPRESS-ERRORS=
/          *FILE-EXISTING
/          SET-FILE-LINK SYS001,F-NAME=&VOL..IJCLFILE.DISK
/.EXEC      START-PROG FROM-FILE=*MODULE(LIB=&PREFBOOT.BOOTLIB,
/          ELEM=CAIJMP,
/          RUN-MODE=*ADV)

NO-OVERPRINT
*          *****
*          *****      SELECT THE PRODUCTS      *****
*          *****

ASF-OPTION    NO      ASF-OPTION OF CA-ADS
CA-ADS        NO      APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM: ONLINE
CA-ADS/APPC   NO      ADS COOPERATIVE PROCESSING OPTION
CA-ADS/BATCH  NO      APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM: BATCH
CA-EDP/AUDITOR NO      EDP AUDITOR & REPORTING TOOL
CA-ICMS       NO      INFORMATION ACCESS TOOL
CA-IDMS/BS2KSERV NO     BS2000 SERVICES FOR CA-IDMS
CA-IDMS/CULPRIT NO     REPORT WRITER FOR CA-IDMS/DB
CA-IDMS/DB    NO      DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
CA-IDMS/DB-SQL NO     SQL SUPPORT FOR CA-IDMS/DB
CA-IDMS/DBCS  NO     DBCS OPTION FOR CA-IDMS/DB
CA-IDMS/DC    NO     TELEPROCESSING MONITOR
CA-IDMS/DDS   NO     DISTRIBUTED DATABASE SYSTEM
CA-IDMS/DL1/T NO     CA-IDMS/DL1 TRANSPARENCY
CA-IDMS/PERFMON NO    CA-IDMS PERFORMANCE MONITOR
CA-IDMS/SERVER NO    CA-IDMS/SERVER
CA-IDMS/UCF   NO    TP COMMUNICATION FACILITY

```

3.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIJMP of BOOTLIB

CA-OLQ	NO	CA-IDMS/DB QUERY TOOL
CA-PRESSPACK	NO	CA-IDMS/DB DISK COMPRESSION
CA-VTX/PRESTEL	NO	CA-VIDEOTEXT PRETEL
CA-VTX/TELETEL	NO	CA-VIDEOTEXT TELETEL
*		*****
*		***** DEFINE PASSWORDS *****
*		*****
PW1	XXXXXXX	
PW2	XXXXXXX	
PW3	XXXXXXX	
PW4	XXXXXXX	
PW5	XXXXXXX	
PW6	XXXXXXX	
PW7	XXXXXXX	
PW8	XXXXXXX	
PW9	XXXXXXX	
PW10	XXXXXXX	
PW11	XXXXXXX	
PW12	XXXXXXX	
PW13	XXXXXXX	
PW14	XXXXXXX	
PW15	XXXXXXX	
PW16	XXXXXXX	
PW17	XXXXXXX	
PW18	XXXXXXX	
PW19	XXXXXXX	
PW20	XXXXXXX	
PW21	XXXXXXX	
PW22	XXXXXXX	
PW23	XXXXXXX	
PW24	XXXXXXX	
PW25	XXXXXXX	
PW26	XXXXXXX	
PW27	XXXXXXX	
PW28	XXXXXXX	
PW29	XXXXXXX	
PW30	XXXXXXX	
PW31	XXXXXXX	
PW32	XXXXXXX	
PW33	XXXXXXX	
PW34	XXXXXXX	
PW35	XXXXXXX	
PW36	XXXXXXX	
PW37	XXXXXXX	
PW38	XXXXXXX	
PW39	XXXXXXX	

```

* ***** CUSTOMIZATION PARAMETERS *****
* *****

GJUPGRAD NO GJUPGRAD = YES OR NO
OPSYS BS2K OPERATING SYSTEM BS2000/OSD V2.0 AND UP
BSJCARD1 "REMARK SET-LOGON-PAR JCL 1" LOGON JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD2 "REMARK SET-LOGON-PAR JCL 2" LOGON JCL-CARD 2
BSJCARD3 "REMARK SET-LOGON-PAR JCL 3" LOGON JCL-CARD 3
BSJCARD4 "REMARK SET-LOGON-PAR JCL 4" LOGON JCL-CARD 4
BSJCARD5 "RESOURCES=PAR(CPU-LIMIT=NO)" ENTER JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD6 "REMARK ENTER JCL 2" ENTER JCL-CARD 2
STCOBNAM START-COBOL85-COMPILER NAME OF COBOL COMPILER
BSCOBLIB $.SYSLNK.CRTE.PARTIAL-BIND NAME OF COBOL RUNTIME LIBRARY
STASMNAM START-ASSEMBH NAME OF ASSEMBLER
BSASMSML $MACROLIB NAME OF SYSTEM MACROLIB (SYSLIB)
DCAM-MACLIB $MACROLIB NAME OF DCAM MACROLIB
TIAM-MACLIB $MACROLIB NAME OF TIAM MACROLIB
VTSU-MACLIB $MACROLIB NAME OF VTSU MACROLIB
STLNKNAM START-BINDER NAME OF LINKAGE EDITOR
BSSRTNAM $SORT NAME OF SORT
BSSRTLIB $SORTLIB NAME OF SORT RUNTIME LIBRARY
STEDTNAM START-EDT NAME OF EDITOR
STLMSNAM START-LMS NAME OF LIBRARY MAINTENANCE SYSTEM
TAPEUNIT T-C4 UNIT TYPE FOR INSTALLATION TAPE
JOB1 JOB1 DATASET ALLOCATION
JOB2 JOB2 OFFLOAD SOURCES & OBJECTS
JOB3 JOB3 PROCESS CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLIES
JOB4 JOB4 DO "SMP RECEIVE"
JOB5 JOB5 DO "SMP APPLY"
JOB6 JOB6 BUILD IDMS RUNTIME ENVIRONMENT
JOB7 JOB7 CA-IDMS/DB DEMO
JOB8 JOB8 CA-IDMS/SQL DEMO
JOB9 JOB9 CA-IDMS/DC DEMO
JOB10 JOB10 FINAL DATABASE BACKUP
JOB11 JOB11 DO "SMP ACCEPT"
PDETYPE DYNAMIC (DYNAMIC/STATIC) (DIS)ALLOW USE OF DYNAMIC PDE
DISKACCM " " DISK FILE ACCESS METHOD (LEAVE BLANK !)
DISKVOL " " INSTALL DB-FILES ON PUBLIC VOLUME
DISKUNIT " " INSTALL DB-FILES ON PUBLIC DEVICE
WORKVOL " " INSTALL WORK-FILES ON PUBLIC VOLUME
WORKUNIT " " INSTALL WORK-FILES ON PUBLIC DEVICE
WORKXTNT 2001,600 SPACE FOR ALL TEMPORARY WORK DATASETS
PREFIX &PREF PREFIX FOR ALL LIBRARIES AND WORK-FILES
DBPREFIX &PREF PREFIX FOR DB-FILES
STORPROT YES STORPROT
* ***** SECURITY ON/OFF *****
* *****

AUTHUSER "" AUTHORIZED USER ID FOR DICTIONARY SIGNON
AUTHUSERPW "" AUTHORIZED USER PASSWORD FOR DICT SIGNON

```

3.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIJMP of BOOTLIB

```
* *****  
* *  
* **** PRODUCT SPECIFIC PARAMETERS ****  
* *  
* * THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS CAN BE USED TO *  
* * CUSTOMIZE ANY PRODUCT SPECIFIC ASSEMBLER *  
* * STEPS THAT TAKE PLACE DURING THE INSTALL. *  
* *  
* *****  
* *****  
* *  
* **** SELECT GENERAL IDMS-DB PARAMETERS ***  
* *  
* *****  


|           |          |                                                      |
|-----------|----------|------------------------------------------------------|
| OPTICENT  | YES      | IDMSOPTI PARM                                        |
| GLBLDMCL  | R150DMCL | NAME OF YOUR GLOBAL DMCL LOAD MODULE                 |
| FREESTG   | 64       | FREESTG VALUE FOR ASSEMBLY OF RHDCPARM               |
| DC-SYSTEM | 90       | DC SYSTEM NUMBER FOR ASSEMBLY OF RHDCPARM            |
| CASE-MODE | UPLOW    | TERMINALS SUPPORT UPPER OR MIXED CASE? (UPLOW/UPPER) |
| BSERXLEN  | 36       | BS2000 ERE EXTENSION LENGTH                          |
| BSREGION  | 8000     | STARTUP REGION SIZE                                  |
| BSXMPPOOL | 2        | X-MEMORY POOL IN SEGMENTS                            |
| BSPRTLOG  | YES      | AUTOMATIC PRINT LOGFILES (YES/NO)                    |
| BSMODULE  | IDMSDCB  | STARTUP MODULE NAME                                  |
| BSMAXTSN  | 1        | NUMBER OF TASKS                                      |
| BSMESSID  | IDMS000  | CONSOLE MESSAGE-ID                                   |

  


|           |         |                                            |
|-----------|---------|--------------------------------------------|
| PMAMACT   | YES     | ACTIVATE APPLICATION MONITOR: NO/YES       |
| PMAMDCLOG | YES     | WRITE APPLICATION MONITOR STATS TO DDLCLOG |
| PMIMACT   | YES     | ACTIVATE INTERVAL MONITOR: NO/YES          |
| PMIMDCLOG | YES     | WRITE INTERVAL MONITOR STATS TO DDLCLOG    |
| PMDCSTAT  | YES     | WRITE DCSTATS TO DDLCLOG: NO/YES           |
| PMCOMPANY | DEFAULT | COMPANY NAME TO APPEAR ON BATCH REPORTS    |

  


|            |           |                                           |
|------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------|
| CULL-PROF1 | DS=E      | CULPRIT PROFILE OPTION 1 (EUROPEAN VALUE) |
| CULL-PROF2 | MONEYED=E | CULPRIT PROFILE OPTION 2 (EUROPEAN VALUE) |

  


|       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| ***** | ***** | ***** |
| *     | ***** | ***** |
| *     | ***** | ***** |
| ***** | ***** | ***** |
| *     | ***** | ***** |
| *     | ***** | ***** |
| ***** | ***** | ***** |

  


|            |         |                                  |
|------------|---------|----------------------------------|
| BAK1ACTION | RESTORE | BACKUP AND RESTORE WILL BE DONE  |
| BAK2ACTION | RESTORE | BACKUP AND RESTORE WILL BE DONE  |
| BAK3ACTION | RESTORE | BACKUP AND RESTORE WILL BE DONE  |
| BAK1VOL    | TBKU01  | VOLSER OF BACKUP TAPE OF SYSDIRL |


```

```

* AFTER DIRECTORY LOAD
BAK2VOL      TBKU02    VOLSER OF BACKUP TAPE AFTER RHDCSGEN
*          OF SYSTEM 99 (JOB6)
BAK3VOL      TBKU03    VOLSER OF FINAL BACKUP TAPE (JOB10)
*****
*      DESCRIBE INSTALLATION LIBRARIES ****
*****
INDAPAXTNT   200,99    SPACE ALLOCATION FOR APAR LIBRARY
INDSRCXTNT   6201,99   SPACE ALLOCATION FOR SOURCE LIBRARY
INDMACXTNT   3102,99   SPACE ALLOCATION FOR MACRO LIBRARY
INDLOADXTNT  20000,999  SPACE ALLOCATION FOR LOAD LIBRARY
DBALOADXTNT  801,90    SPACE ALLOCATION FOR DBA LOAD LIBRARY
DBASRCXTNT  201,30    SPACE ALLOCATION FOR DBA SOURCE LIBRARY
*****
*      DESCRIBE DATABASE FILES ****
*****
*      SYSTEM SEGMENT PARAMETERS
DCDMLXTNT   6000,0     NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCDMLPAGS    2000       NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCDMLPGSZ   6144       LOGICAL PAGE SIZE
DCLODXTNT   501,0      NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCLODPAGS    250        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCLOGXTNT   1002,0     NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCLOGPAGS    500        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCRUNXTNT   402,0      NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCRUNPAGS    200        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCSCRXTNT   1002,0     NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCSCRPAGS    500        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*
CATSYS SEGMENT PARAMETERS
DCCATXTNT   600,0      NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCCATPAGS    300        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCCATLXTNT  402,0      NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCCATLPAGS   200        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCCATXXTNT  201,0      NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCCATXPAGS   100        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*
SYSDIRL SEGMENT PARAMETERS
DIRLXTNT    4002,0     NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DIRLPAGS     2000       NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DIRLLODXTNT 21,0       NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DIRLLODPAGS  10         NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*
SYSMSG SEGMENT PARAMETERS
DCMSGXTNT   8001,0     NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCMSGPAGS   4000       NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*
SYSLOC SEGMENT PARAMETERS
DCLSCRPAGS  400        NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DCLSCRPGSZ  2048       LOGICAL PAGE SIZE
*
APPLDICT SEGMENT PARAMETERS
DICTXTNT    2001,0     NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DICTPAGS    2000       NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DICTPGSZ    2048       LOGICAL PAGE SIZE

```

DLODXTNT	501,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DLODPAGS	500	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
DLODPGSZ	2048	LOGICAL PAGE SIZE
*		SYSUSER SEGMENT PARAMETERS
SECXTNT	252,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
SECPAGS	125	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*		SYSSQL SEGMENT PARAMETERS
SQLXTNT	1002,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
SQLPAGS	500	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
SQLLXTNT	501,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
SQLLPAGS	250	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
SQLXXTNT	252,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
SQLXPAGS	125	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*		ASFdict SEGMENT PARAMETERS
*		THIS SEGMENT IS ONLY REQUIRED FOR SITES INSTALLING THE ASF-OPTION
ASF-OPT-INIT	YES	ALLOCATE AND FORMAT A NEW ASF DICTIONARY
ADMIXTNT	1200,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ADMLPAGS	600	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ADEFNXTNT	402,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ADEFNPAGS	200	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ADATAXTNT	600,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ADATAPAGS	300	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ADLODXTNT	801,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ADLODPAGS	400	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*		EMPDEMO SEGMENT PARAMETERS
EMPXTNT	150,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
EMPPAGS	50	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
EMPPGSZ	6144	LOGICAL PAGE SIZE
INSXTNT	75,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
INSPAGS	25	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
INSPGSZ	6144	LOGICAL PAGE SIZE
ORGXTNT	75,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ORGPAGS	25	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
ORGPGSZ	6144	LOGICAL PAGE SIZE
*		SQLDEMO SEGMENT PARAMETERS
EMPLXTNT	201,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
EMPLPAGS	100	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
INFOXTNT	102,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
INFOPAGS	50	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
INDXXTNT	102,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
INDXPAGS	50	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*		PROJSEG SEGMENT PARAMETERS
PROJXTNT	102,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
PROJPAGS	50	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR THIS AREA
*		DISK AND TAPE JOURNAL PARAMETERS
J1XTNT	1002,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR J1JRNL
J2XTNT	1002,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR J2JRNL
J3XTNT	1002,0	NUMBER OF PHYSICAL PAGES FOR J3JRNL
J1PAGS	1000	NUMBER OF LOGICAL PAGES FOR ALL JOURNALS

```
J1PGSZ      2048      LOGICAL PAGE SIZE      FOR ALL JOURNALS
TJRNVOL     TJRN00    VOLSER OF JOURNAL TAPE
*
SYSCTLXTNT 3,0       SPACE ALLOCATION FOR SYSCTL FILE
*
*****
*          ***** DESCRIBE WORK FILES      *****
*****
WRKAXTNT   60,30    SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRKA FILE
WRKBXTNT   60,30    SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRKB FILE
WRKCXTNT   300,30   SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRKC FILE
WRK1XTNT   300,30   SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRK1 FILE
WRK2XTNT   300,30   SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRK2 FILE
/SET-JOB-STEP
/           ASS-SYSLST T0=*>PRIMARY
/           ASS-SYSOPT T0=*>PRIMARY
/           REM-FILE-LINK SYS001
/.ENDJ      EXIT-PROC
```

3.6 Step 5. Execute CAIIJMP to generate the install JCL

The next step is to execute the CAIIJMP program which will generate the tailored installation JCL. The SYSOPT output of the CAIIJMP program contains all of the JCL required to install CA-IDMS tailored to your installation requirements. Review this JCL carefully before proceeding with the next step. If the tailored JCL needs to be changed in any way, correct the appropriate CAIIJMP parameter and execute CAIIJMP again to generate new JCL. Once the generated JCL is correct, you are ready to proceed with the install.

The CAIIJMP program produces a listing which should be kept for future references as a documentation of the installation. The CAIIJMP listing consists of three parts:

1. **SYS001 parameter input**

Contains all of the possible CAIIJMP input parameters and associated default values. Use this listing as a reference for parameters which may be required for special situations.

2. **SYSIPT parameter input**

Contains the parameters specified to CAIIJMP for this execution.

3. **SYSOPT output listing**

Contains the tailored JCL produced by CAIIJMP. All of the JCL required to install CA-IDMS is included and should be retained for reference.

3.7 Step 6. Execute the Installation JCL

The next step is to execute the installation JCL produced by CAIJMP. The CA-IDMS installation JCL consists of eleven major jobs. Each job consists of one or more job steps. Computer Associates recommends that you run the eleven major jobs individually. You should check return codes from each job step within these major jobs prior to submitting the next major job.

The eleven install jobs are separated by comments indicating the job number. Job card information is repeated prior to each job. Begin the install by submitting each job in sequence. The expected return codes for each step in the job are indicated as a comment after the EXEC statement for the job step. The eleven major jobs of the CA-IDMS install are listed below:

Job 1: Allocate libraries and files — Job 1 performs the following allocation and definition steps:

- Allocates the CA-IDMS source, macro and load libraries
- Allocates the DBA source and load libraries
- Allocates the CA-IDMS database files
- Allocates the CA-IDMS journal files
- Allocates the CA-IDMS SYSCTL file

Job 2: Load install libraries — CAIIPDS is executed and loads the CA-IDMS object and source modules from the encrypted and compressed files into the macro, source and load libraries.

Job 3: Customize CA-IDMS — Job 3 runs a number of functions of the CA-IDMS Customization and Modification Utility IDMSMOD. See the *CA-IDMS Usage in the BS2000/OSD Environment* manual for more information.

Job 4: Do SMP Receive

Job 5: Do SMP Apply

Job 6: Build CA-IDMS system environment — Job 6 builds the CA-IDMS 15.0 dictionary and catalog component and generates system 99 which is used later to generate system 90. The actual steps generated by CAIJMP for Job 6 depend upon the product mix which is selected for installation. System 90 is used to build your DC/UCF system.

Job 7: Build the Commonwealth demonstration database — Job 7 builds the Commonwealth demonstration database.

Job 8: Build the SQL demonstration database — Job 8 builds the SQL demonstration database. This job generates only if you install the CA-IDMS SQL Option.

Job 9: Build the sample DC/UCF system — Job 9 builds the sample DC/UCF, system 90. System 90 is used to generate your customized 15.0 and above system. This job also formats the journal files.

Job 10: Backup installed database files — Job 10 performs a backup of all the installed database files and runs a PRINT SPACE report which shows file utilization by segment.

Job 11: Do SMP Accept

3.8 Step 7. Modify System 90

The next step in installing CA-IDMS is optional. Use the COMP procedure with function "GEN" to modify some of the system 90 parameters.

- CVNUMBER parameter — Specify the central version number for this DC system.
- SYSCTL parameter — Specify SYSCTL is SYSCTL.
- XA REENTRANT POOL parameter — Specify a value for the XA reentrant pool. This is required if running on BS2000 31 bit systems.
- DCAMLIN statement — Specify statements to define a DCAM line for the DC/UCF system.

3.8.1 Step 8. Copy System 90

The next step is to copy system 90 to a new DC/UCF system. Do not use 90 as your system number. Use the COMP procedure with function "GEN" to copy system 90 to your own system with following input:

```
SIG DIC SYSTEM.  
ICTL=(1,72)  
COPY SYSTEM FROM SYSTEM 90 TO your_system_number.  
GENERATE.
```

3.9 Step 9. Verify the System is Installed

Before you begin the verification process, all installation jobs must have successfully completed. The verification process consists of three parts:

1. System startup
2. Online verification
3. Batch verification

Each of these processes is discussed below.

System Startup: Execute the DC/UCF startup module to bring up your CA-IDMS system. The system is active when the 'Enter Next Task Code' message appears.

Online Verification: The online verification process consists of the following steps:

1. **DCMT verification** — The installation includes a CLIST that executes a large percentage of the DCMT DISPLAY xxxx functions. To use this CLIST once your online environment is established, enter:

CLIST DCMT-DEMO-CLIST

at the DC/UCF 'ENTER NEXT TASK CODE' prompt. This invokes the CLIST and allows you to view the new DCMT DISPLAY output.

2. **IDD verification** — To validate CA-IDD, sign on to the APPLDICT dictionary and try a number of CA-IDD commands such as: DISPLAY ALL MODULES, DISPLAY ALL USERS and DISPLAY ALL SCHEMAS.
3. **Online Command Facility (OCF) verification** — To verify OCF, enter the following commands:

- DCUF SET DICTNAME SYSTEM
- OCF
- DISPLAY SEGMENT SYSTEM

This displays the definitions of the segment, files and physical areas that comprise the SYSTEM segment.

- DISPLAY DMCL R150DMCL

This displays the installation DMCL that was created during the installation process.

- DISPLAY DBTABLE R150DBTB

This displays the database name table that was created during the installation process.

Most other online products are optional. To test these products (such as CA-ADS, CA-OLQ, CA-IDMS Performance Monitor), use these products once you establish your online system.

Batch Verification: The batch verification process consists of a number of steps. An important part of this process occurred during the actual installation. Several CA-IDMS tools and utilities are executed during the installation, including the following:

- ADSOBSYS — The ADSOBSYS utility creates the ADSOOPTI module to define the \$TOOLTCF (Transfer Control Facility) as a valid CA-ADS runtime application.
- ADSOBSTAT — The batch CA-ADS application table load utility (ADSOBTAT) is run to define the \$TOOLTCF (Transfer Control Facility) as a valid CA-ADS runtime application.
- IDMSBCF — The CA-IDMS Batch Command Facility (IDMSBCF) controls the execution of most of the CA-IDMS utility programs, DBTABLE processing and SQL processing. The utilities invoked by IDMSBCF during the installation are:
 - BACKUP
 - FORMAT
 - PRINT PAGE
 - PRINT SPACE
 - RESTORE
 - ROLLBACK
 - ROLLFORWARD
- IDMSCHEM — The non-SQL, Commonwealth Demonstration Database schema, EMPSCHM version 100, is added to the APPLDICT DDLDML area using the schema compiler.
- IDMSDDDL — A large number of data dictionary batch jobs are run that load various types of entities (messages, elements, records and modules) into a number of DDLDML and DDLDCLOD areas.
- IDMSDMLC — Various programs, including EMPLOAD are processed using the CA-IDMS COBOL pre-processor (IDMSDMLC) during the creation of the non-SQL demonstration database.
- IDMSRPTS — The CA-IDMS Schema Reporter program is executed to list various reports for EMPSCHM Version 100 during the installation of the non-SQL demonstration database.
- IDMSUBSC — The subschema used to define the non-SQL demonstration database, EMPSS01, is loaded and generated using the subschema compiler.
- RHDCMAP1 — The batch mapping compiler is used to load the map, EMPMAP, into the APPLDICT DDLDML area.
- RHDCMPUT — The batch mapping utility module is run to do a PROCESS=ALL for map, EMPMAP, in the APPLDICT dictionary.
- RHDCSGEN — The batch system generation compiler is executed to create SYSTEM 99, the base CA-IDMS system, and SYSTEM 90, a tailored system.

3.9 Step 9. Verify the System is Installed

All jobs executed during the installation process are run in local mode. You may wish to test some of these tasks running against your central version once it is established. You can test any other programs not executed during the installation at your convenience.

3.10 Step 10. Offload the CCI.LIB from Tape

If you haven't done a base install of the product **CA-IDMS/SERVER**, you have to skip this step.

To start the CA-IDMS/SERVER installation process, copy and rename the CCI.LIB from tape to disk using the following JCL:

JCL (BS2000)

```
.          ASS-SYSDTA T0=*SYSCMD
/          ASS-SYSLST T0=lstfile
/          START-PROG $ARCHIVE
PARAM STREAM=YES,CATID=NO
F NA=($DBDC.CCI.LIB,RENAME=CCI.LIB)
IMPORT LIST=BOTH,REPLACE=YES,DEVICE=T-C4,FROM=(volume)
END
```

lstfile = file name of the SYSLST file
volume = volume name of the tape

After execution of this JCL, the following PLAM library will have been offloaded:

- **CCI.LIB**

For more information, see *CA-IDMS Usage in the BS2000/OSD Environment* manual.

3.11 Step 11. Offload the INTBLOAD.LOADLIB from Tape

Copy the INTBLOAD.LOADLIB from tape to disk using the following JCL:

JCL (BS2000)

```
.  
/      ASS-SYSDTA  TO=SYSCMD  
/      ASS-SYSLST  TO=lstfile  
/      START-PROG  $ARCHIVE  
PARAM STREAM=YES,CATID=NO  
F NA=($DBDC.INTBLOAD.LOADLIB,RENAME=INTBLOAD.LOADLIB)  
IMPORT LIST=BOTH,REPLACE=YES,DEVICE=T-C4,FROM=(volume)  
END
```

lstfile = file name of the SYSLST file
volume = volume name of the tape

After execution of this JCL, the following PLAM library will have been offloaded:

- **INTBLOAD.LOADLIB**

For more information, see the *CA-IDMS Usage in the BS2000/OSD Environment* manual.

Chapter 4. CA-IDMS Tools Installation Steps

4.1 Overview of Installation Steps	4-4
4.2 Step 1. Review Cover Letters and PIBs	4-6
4.3 Step 2. System Requirements	4-7
4.4 Step 3. Offload the Installation Files from Tape	4-8
4.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB	4-9
4.5.1 Customize Installation JCL	4-9
4.5.2 CAIIJMP Input Parameters	4-9
4.5.3 CAIIJMP Input Parameter Rules	4-10
4.5.4 CAIIJMP Parameter Descriptions	4-10
4.5.5 Sample CAIIJMP Input from Boot Library	4-11
4.6 Step 5. Execute CAIIJMP to Generate the Install JCL	4-19
4.7 Step 6. Execute the Installation JCL	4-20
4.7.1 Job 1	4-20
4.7.2 Job 2	4-20
4.7.3 Job 3	4-20
4.7.3.1 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator	4-21
4.7.3.2 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor	4-21
4.7.3.3 CA-IDMS/DML Online	4-21
4.7.3.4 CA-IDMS/DC SORT	4-22
4.7.3.5 CA-IDMS/DC-SORT Customization	4-23
4.7.4 Job 4	4-24
4.7.5 Job 5	4-24
4.7.6 Job 6	4-24
4.7.7 Job 7	4-24
4.8 Steps 7 and 8. Install User Exits and Update the Dictionaries	4-25
4.8.1 USFUEXTX	4-25
4.8.1.1 How to Assemble USFUEXTX	4-25
4.8.2 RHDCUXIT	4-25
4.8.2.1 How to Assemble RHDCUXIT	4-26
4.8.3 Update the Dictionaries	4-27
4.9 Step 9. Modify Your Start-Up JCL: the FILE Procedure	4-29
4.10 Step 10. Cycle Your CA-IDMS System	4-30
4.11 Step 11. Install Default JCL	4-31
4.12 Step 12. Add Another SASO Document (Optional)	4-32
4.13 Step 13. Recover Library Space	4-33

This chapter describes the steps required to install the CA-IDMS Tools products on a BS2000 system.

Review Overview of Installation Steps in this chapter before beginning the CA-IDMS Tools installation process.

4.1 Overview of Installation Steps

The following list summarizes the steps involved in the CA-IDMS Tools installation process. Review this list before you begin the installation process.

The remainder of this chapter describes each installation step in detail.

- **Step 1**

Review the installation package cover letter and any PIBs included with the installation package for pertinent installation information.

- **Step 2**

Review the CA-IDMS Tools system requirements. Be sure all requirements are met before beginning the install process.

- **Step 3**

Unload the base installation files from tape to disk.

- **Step 4**

Modify member CAIIJMP of the boot library.

- **Step 5**

Execute CAIIJMP to generate the customized installation JCL.

- **Step 6**

Execute the installation JCL generated by CAIIJMP.

- **Step 7**

Install user exits for CA-IDMS/Masterkey, CA-IDMS/ADS Alive and CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer.

- **Step 8**

Update the dictionary with CA-IDMS/ADS Trace attribute records and elements, CA-IDMS/DC SORT and CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator records and modules, and CA-IDMS/DML Online extended security and/or access restrictions.

- **Step 9**

Modify your start-up JCL.

- **Step 10**

Cycle your CA-IDMS system.

- **Step 11**

Install default JCL for CA-IDMS/Database Extractor and CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator.

- **Step 12**

Add another SASO Document (Optional).

■ **Step 13**

Recover Library Space.

4.2 Step 1. Review Cover Letters and PIBs

Review any cover letters or PIBs in your installation package. Review this information for any additional steps or site-relevant information required to complete your CA-IDMS Tools installation.

Additionally, review the topics below before installing CA-IDMS Tools. These topics may have an impact on the parameters you select when installing CA-IDMS Tools.

The CA-IDMS Tools Utility Products may require additional installation steps. Review the installation documentation included in your installation package for any Product Information Bulletins (PIBs). Additional installation steps not documented in this guide will be documented in the PIBs.

4.3 Step 2. System Requirements

Review the CA-IDMS Tools system requirements. Be sure that all system requirements are met before beginning the installation process.

Required software environment:

- CA-IDMS 15.0
- BS2000 OSD V2.0 or higher
- ARCHIVE V 4.0A or higher
- LMS VS 3.2 or higher
- SORT 7.5 or higher
- EDT VS 16.6 or higher
- TIAM V11.2 or higher
- ASSEMBLER H any version
- COBOL85 any version

4.4 Step 3. Offload the Installation Files from Tape

To begin the CA-IDMS Tools installation process, offload the installation files from the tape to disk using the following procedure:

```
/.UNLOAD  BEG-PROC LOG=NO,PAR=
/          YES(PROC-PAR=(      -
/          &UID=              -
/          ,&PREFIX=          -
/          ,&VOLUME=          -
/          ),ESC-CHAR='&')    -
/          ASS-SYSDTA TO=*>SYSCMD
/          REMARK ****
/          REMARK UNLOAD BASE INSTALLATION FILES USING ARCHIVE
/          REMARK ****
/          START-ARCHIVE
PARAM STREAM=YES,CATID=NO
F NA=($DB15..&PREFIX.,RENAME=&UID..&PREFIX.)
I DIR=NONE,DEVICE=T-C4,FR=(&VOLUME),LIST=SYSOUT
END
/          EXIT-PROC
```

where:

- &PREFIX is F0WIIsB for the CA-IDMS Tools installation. F0 represents Release 15.0; WI is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS Tools; s is the service pack number; B indicates a base tape.
- &VOLUME is the name of the tape.
- &UID is the userid under which you install the Tools.

The boot library contains the programs CAIIPDS and CAIIJMP (type L members) and the prototype procedure CAIIJMP (type J member).

4.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB

The CA-IDMS Tools installation JCL is customized for your site and generates the CAIIJMP program. Input to CAIIJMP consists of parameters and parameter values which you supply to:

- Define the CA-IDMS Tools products you install.
- Define your system environment where you install those products.

4.5.1 Customize Installation JCL

The type J member CAIIJMP of the boot library is a procedure to execute CAIIJMP to generate the installation JCL. Customize the CAIIJMP input parameter values in the procedure to conform to your product installation profile and your system environment.

4.5.2 CAIIJMP Input Parameters

The CAIIJMP member contains a default set of CAIIJMP input parameters and values. The parameter set is annotated to assist you in the parameter selection process. Follow the guidelines in the CAIIJMP member and update the parameter values to define the CA-IDMS Tools products you are installing and to define your site specific system environment and naming conventions. In most cases, you can accept the default parameters.

Note: There are several new CAIIJMP parameters. Refer to the sample CAIIJMP procedure for more details.

Types of CAIIJMP parameters are:

- Product parameters — Define the CA-IDMS Tools products you install. Specify the products to be installed by coding the appropriate parameter with a value of **INSTALL**. For example, to install CA-ADS Alive, fill in **INSTALL** instead of **NO**.

'ADS-ALIVE INSTALL PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ADS-ALIVE'

If you do not want to install CA-ADS Alive, the parameter should remain **NO**:

'ADS-ALIVE NO PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ADS-ALIVE'

Note: Do not use the value of **YES**. **INSTALL** and **NO** are the only valid parameters.

- Password parameters — Define the required product passwords. The passwords for your CA-IDMS Tools product profile are included in your installation package.
- Global parameters — Define naming conventions and device conventions common to many parameters.
- Library parameters — Define the DBMS, IDMS and DBA libraries and any other libraries required by the CA-IDMS Tools installation.
- Database parameters — Define the database files required by CA-IDMS Tools.

- Operating System parameters — Define your operating system environment.
- Runtime option parameters — Define the default set of runtime parameters for online tools.
- Miscellaneous parameters — Define special product or site requirements.

4.5.3 CAIJMP Input Parameter Rules

Follow these rules when coding CAIJMP input parameters:

- The parameter name must start in column 1.
- The parameter value follows the parameter name. At least one blank must separate the parameter name and the parameter value.
- A parameter value may be up to 80 characters long.
- For long parameter values, leave the remainder of the line blank after the parameter name and use the next line to specify the parameter value.
- If the parameter value contains embedded blanks, you must enclose the entire parameter value in double quotation marks.
- If the parameter value itself contains quotation marks, use a single quotation mark for the embedded quotation mark and enclose the parameter value string in double quotation marks.
- You can specify comments on the same line as the parameter value by leaving one or more blanks after the parameter value.
- To place a comment on a separate line, place an asterisk in column one followed by the comment text.
- You must follow an asterisk by text on the same line. You cannot insert a blank line by entering an asterisk followed by spaces. CAIJMP interprets the next text read after an asterisk as a comment regardless of the line or column.

4.5.4 CAIJMP Parameter Descriptions

Appendix D, “CA-IDMS Tools CAIJMP Parameter List” on page D-1 of this guide contains a listing of CAIJMP parameters, which is part of the CAIJMP job output. You can refer to this listing for more information during the installation process.

Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for descriptions of tool runtime option parameters. Tool runtime parameters are customization values that are set at installation time but you may alter them at any time after you complete the installation.

4.5.5 Sample CAIIJMP Input from Boot Library

Sample CAIIJMP input parameters from the boot library are provided below. This member is included for reference purposes only. The CAIIJMP member may change as new tapes are distributed. Products valid to install from one tape may not be valid to install from another tape. Additionally, changes may be made to the CAIIJMP input parameters. Always use the CAIIJMP member from the BOOTLIB library on the tape you install.

4.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB

```
/BEG-PROC LOG=COMMANDS,PAR=YES(PROC-PAR=          -
/      (          -
/          &PREF=          -
/          ,&PREFBOOT=F0WI0B.          -
/          ,&VOL=F0WI0B          -
/          ,&SUPPORT=DISK          -
/          ),ESC-CHAR='&')          -
/REMARK          -
/REMARK      ENTER INSTALLATION PREFIX (WITH ENDING '.') --> &PREF          -
/REMARK      ENTER INSTALLATION TAPE VOLUME NAME          --> &VOL          -
/REMARK      ENTER IJCL FILE SUPPORT (DISK/TAPE)          --> &SUPPORT          -
/REMARK          -
/          ASS-SYSDTA TO=*SYSCMD          -
/          ASS-SYSOPT TO=&VOL..JOB          -
/          ASS-SYSLST TO=&VOL..SYSLST.CAIIJMP          -
/          SKIP-COM TO-LABEL=&SUPPORT          -
/.TAPE          REMARK : TAPE FILE PROCESSING          -
/          REMARK : NOT SUPPORTED          -
/.DISK          REMARK : DISK FILE PROCESSING          -
/          CRE-FILE F-NAME=&VOL..IJCLFILE.DISK,SUPPRESS-ERRORS=          -
/          *FILE-EXISTING          -
/          SET-FILE-LINK SYS001,F-NAME=&VOL..IJCLFILE.DISK          -
/.EXEC          START-PROG FROM-FILE=*MODULE(LIB=&PREFBOOT.BOOTLIB,          -
/              ELEM=CAIIJMP,          -
/              RUN-MODE=*ADV)          -
NO-OVERPRINT          -
*          ****SELECT THE PRODUCTS****          -
*          ****          -
*          ****          -
ADS-ALIVE          NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ADS-ALIVE          -
ADS-TRACE          NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ADS-TRACE          -
DB-ANALYZER         NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB-ANALYZER          -
DB-AUDIT           NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB-AUDIT          -
DB-EXTRACTOR        NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DATABASE EXTRACTOR          -
DB-REORG            NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB-REORG          -
DC-SORT             NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DC-SORT          -
DICT-MIGRATOR       NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR          -
DICT-MOD-EDITOR     NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MODULE EDITOR          -
DICT-QUERY-FACIL   NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY QUERY FACILITY          -
DML-ONLINE          NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DML-ONLINE          -
ENFORCER            NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ENFORCER          -
JOURNAL-ANALYZER   NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/JOURNAL ANALYZER          -
LOG-ANALYZER        NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/LOG ANALYZER          -
MASTERKEY           NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/MASTERKEY          -
ONLINE-LOG-DSPLY    NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ONLINE LOG DISPLAY          -
SASO                NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/SASO          -
SCHEMA-MAPPER       NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/SCHEMA MAPPER          -
TASK-ANALYZER       NO          PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/TASK ANALYZER          -
```

```

* ***** *****
*          DEFINE PASSWORDS      *****
* ***** *****
PW1      XXXXXXXX
PW2      XXXXXXXX
PW3      XXXXXXXX
PW4      XXXXXXXX
PW5      XXXXXXXX
PW6      XXXXXXXX
PW7      XXXXXXXX
PW8      XXXXXXXX
PW9      XXXXXXXX
PW10     XXXXXXXX
PW11     XXXXXXXX
PW12     XXXXXXXX
PW13     XXXXXXXX
PW14     XXXXXXXX
PW15     XXXXXXXX
PW16     XXXXXXXX
PW17     XXXXXXXX
PW18     XXXXXXXX
PW19     XXXXXXXX
PW20     XXXXXXXX
* ***** *****
*          CUSTOMIZATION PARAMETERS      *****
* ***** *****
OPSYS    BS2K      OPERATING SYSTEM BS2000/OSD V2.0 AND UP
BSJCARD1 "REMARK LOGON JCL 1"  LOGON JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD2 "REMARK LOGON JCL 2"  LOGON JCL-CARD 2
BSJCARD3 "REMARK LOGON JCL 3"  LOGON JCL-CARD 3
BSJCARD4 "REMARK LOGON JCL 4"  LOGON JCL-CARD 4
BSJCARD5 "RESOURCES=PAR(CPU-LIMIT=NO)" ENTER JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD6 "REMARK ENTER JCL 2"  ENTER JCL-CARD 2
STCOBNAM START-COBOL85-COMPILER START OF COBOL COMPILER
BSCOBLIB $SYSLNK.CRTE.PARTIAL-BIND NAME OF COBOL RUNTIME LIBRARY
STASMNAM START-ASSEMBH      START OF ASSEMBLER COMPILER
STARCNAM START-ARCHIVE      START OF ARCHIVE PROGRAM
BSASMSML $MACROLIB          NAME OF SYSTEM MACROLIB (SYSLIB)
STLNKNAM START-BINDER       NAME OF LINKAGE EDITOR
BSSRTNAM $SORT               NAME OF SORT
BSSRTLIB $SORTLIB            NAME OF SORT RUNTIME LIBRARY
STEDTNAM START-EDT           START OF EDITOR
STLMSNAM START-LMS           START OF LIBRARY MAINTENANCE SYSTEM
TAPEUNIT T-C4                UNIT TYPE FOR INSTALLATION TAPE
WIUPGRAD NO                  UPGRADE FROM TOOLS 12.0 TO TOOLS 15.0
JOB1     TJOB1               DATASET ALLOCATION
JOB2     TJOB2               OFFLOAD SOURCES & OBJECTS
JOB3     TJOB3               PROCESS CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLIES
JOB4     TJOB4               DO "SMP RECEIVE"
JOB5     TJOB5               DO "SMP APPLY"

```

```

JOB6          TJOB6      BUILD IDMS RUNTIME ENVIRONMENT
JOB7          TJOB7      DO USER EXITS
JOB8          TJOB8      DO "SMP ACCEPT"
PDETYPE      DYNAMIC    (DYNAMIC/STATIC) (DIS)ALLOW USE OF DYNAMIC PDE
DISKACCM      " "        DISK FILE ACCESS METHOD (LEAVE BLANK !)
DISKVOL       " "        INSTALL DB-FILES ON PUBLIC VOLUME
DISKUNIT      " "        INSTALL DB-FILES ON PUBLIC DEVICE
WORKVOL       " "        INSTALL WORK-FILES ON PUBLIC VOLUME
WORKUNIT      " "        INSTALL WORK-FILES ON PUBLIC DEVICE
WORKXTNT     2001,600   SPACE FOR ALL TEMPORARY WORK DATASETS
PREFIX        &PREF     PREFIX FOR ALL LIBRARIES AND DATABASE FILES
PREFIDMS     R150.      PREFIX USED ON THE BASE INSTALL OF IDMS 15.0
*
*****          *****
*
*           **** PRODUCT SPECIFIC PARAMETERS ****
*
*           *
*           * THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS CAN BE USED TO *
*           * CUSTOMIZE ANY PRODUCT SPECIFIC ASSEMBLER *
*           * STEPS THAT TAKE PLACE DURING THE INSTALL. *
*
*           *
*****          *****
*
*           **** SELECT GENERAL IDMS-DB PARAMETERS ***
*
*           *
*           ****
*****          *****
GLBLDMCL     R150DMCL   NAME OF YOUR GLOBAL DMCL LOAD MODULE
DBNAMETB     R150DBTB   NAME OF YOUR DB NAME TABLE LOAD MODULE
*
*****          *****
*
*           * DESCRIBE INSTALLATION LIBRARIES *
*           * THE FOLLOWING LIBRARIES WILL CONTAIN THE SOURCES, MACROS *
*           * LOAD MODULES AND APARS OFFLOADED FROM THIS INSTALLATION *
*           * TAPE. *
*
*****          *****
INDTSRCDSN   DBMS.SRCLIB DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.SRCLIB"
INDT SRCXTNT  2100,10    DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.SRCLIB"
INDT MACDSN   DBMS.MACLIB DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.MACLIB"
INDT MACXTNT  100,10    DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.MACLIB"
INDTLOADDSN   DBMS.LOADLIB DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.LOADLIB"
INDT LOADXTNT 10000,1000 DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.LOADLIB"
INDTAPADSN   DBMS.APARLIB DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.APARLIB"
INDTAPAXTNT  100,10    DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.APARLIB"
INDTLNKDSN   DBMS.LNKLlib DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.LNKLlib"
INDTLNKXTNT  50,10    DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.LNKLlib"
INDSRCDSN   SRCLIB     DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.SRCLIB"
INDMACDSN   MACLIB     DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.MACLIB"
INDLOADDSN   LOADLIB    DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.LOADLIB"
INDAPADSN   APARLIB    DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.APARLIB"

```

```

*                               *****
*                               *      SELECT      *
*                               ***    "DBA" LIBRARIES   ***
*                               *      PARAMETERS     *
*                               *****          *****
*                               * THE DBA LOADLIB CONTAINS THE DMCL, DATABASE      *
*                               * NAME TABLE, SCHEMA AND SUBSCHEMA LOAD MODULES.  *
*                               * THE DBA SRCLIB                                *
*                               *****
*DBALOADDN  DBA.LOADLIB      DATASET NAME FOR "DBA.LOADLIB"
*DBASRCDSN  DBA.SRCLIB      DATASET NAME FOR "DBA.SRCLIB"
*                               *****
*                               *      **** TOOLDICT SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:   ****
*NEW-TDICT  YES           ALLOCATE TOOLDICT SEGMENT (YES/NO)
*TDICTNAME  TOOLDICT       DBNAME FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
*TDICTASGN  TDICTDB        DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "TDICTDB"
*TDICTDSN   TOOLDICT.DDLDML DATASET NAME FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
*TDICTXTNT  4000,100       DISK SPACE FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
*TDICTPGSZ  4096          PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "TDICTDB"
*TDICTPAGS  2000          NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "TDICTDB"
*TDICTLOPG  95001         STARTING PAGE OF "TOOLDICT.DDLDML" AREA
*TDLODASGN  TDLODDB        DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "TDLODDB"
*TDLODDSN   TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD DATASET NAME FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
*TDLODXTNT  200,10         DISK SPACE FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
*TDLODPGSZ  4096          PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "TDLODDB"
*TDLODPAGS  100           NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "TDLODDB"
*TDLODLOPG  98001         STARTING PAGE OF "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD" AREA
*                               *****
*                               *      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE      *
*                               *      A SYSCTL FILE.                            *
*                               *****
*CVMODE     NO            RUN DBTABLE, DMCL AND SYSGEN UNDER CV (YES/NO)
*SYSCTLASGN SYSCTL        DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "SYSCTL" FILE
*SYSCTLDSN  SYSCTL        DATASET NAME FOR "SYSCTL" FILE
*                               *****
*                               *      ADS-ALIVE      *
*                               ***      RUN-TIME      ***
*                               *      PARAMETERS     *
*                               *****
*USGTSK     ADSALIVE      TASK CODE TO INVOKE ADS-ALIVE
*                               *****
*                               *      DATABASE EXTRACTOR  *
*                               ***      INSTALLATION    ***
*                               *      PARAMETERS      *
*                               *****
*UVDATASTPG 0370000      START PAGE FOR USV-DATA-AREA
*UVDATANMPG  3000         NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR USV-DATA-AREA

```

4.5 Step 4. Modify Member CAIJJMP of BOOTLIB

```
*                                ****
*                                * DICT MIGRATOR ASSIST   *
*                                *** INSTALLATION      ***
*                                * PARAMETERS        *
*                                ****
XMDATASTPG 0300000  START PAGE FOR XDM-DATA-AREA
XMDATANMPG 600       NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR XDM-DATA-AREA
XMF1XTNT 1200,10    DISK SPACE FOR FILE "XDMFIL1"
DMAPGSZ 4096       BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR DMA DATABASE
DMADSN DMA.XDMFIL1 DATASET NAME FOR DMA DB FILE XDMFIL1
*                                ****
*                                * DICT MIGRATOR ASSIST   *
*                                *** RUN-TIME          ***
*                                * PARAMETERS        *
*                                ****
DMATSK DMA        TASK CODE TO INVOKE DMA
*                                ****
*                                * DML-ONLINE         *
*                                *** INSTALLATION      ***
*                                * PARAMETERS        *
*                                ****
UDDATASTPG 0360000  START PAGE FOR USD-DATA-AREA
UDDATANMPG 600       NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR USD-DATA-AREA
UDF1XTNT 1200,10    DISK SPACE FOR FILE "USDFIL1"
DMLOPGSZ 4096       BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR DMLO DATABASE
DMLODSN DMLO.PROFILE DATASET NAME FOR DMLO DB FILE PROFILE
*                                ****
*                                * ENFORCER           *
*                                *** INSTALLATION      ***
*                                * PARAMETERS        *
*                                ****
EXCTRLSTPG 0310001  START PAGE FOR ESX-CTRL-AREA
EXCTRLNMPG 500       NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESX-CTRL-AREA
EXLOADSTPG 0310751  START PAGE FOR ESX-LOAD-AREA
EXLOADNMPG 200       NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESX-LOAD-AREA
EXINDEXSTPG 0311001  START PAGE FOR ESX-INDEX-AREA
EXINDEXNMPG 100       NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESX-INDEX-AREA
EXF1XTNT 1000,10    DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESXFIL1"
EXF2XTNT 400,10     DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESXFIL2"
EXF3XTNT 200,10     DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESXFIL3"
ENFRPGSZ 4096       BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR ENFORCER DATABASE
ENFRDSN1 ENFORCER.CTRL  DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER DB FILE CTRL
ENFRDSN2 ENFORCER.LOAD  DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER DB FILE LOAD
ENFRDSN3 ENFORCER.INDEX DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER DB FILE INDEX
* ENFORCER LOAD LIBRARY DEFINITION *
ENFRLDASGN ENFRLOAD  DDNAME FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRLDDSN ENFORCER.LOADLIB DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRLDXTNT 10,10     DISK SPACE FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRLDBKSZ STD       BLOCKSIZE FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
```

```

*                               ****
*                               *      ENFORCER      *
*                               ***    RUN-TIME      ***
*                               *      PARAMETERS    *
*                               ****
ENFTSK     ENFORCER   TASK CODE TO INVOKE ENFORCER
*                               ****
*                               *      MASTERKEY     *
*                               ***    INSTALLATION   ***
*                               *      PARAMETERS    *
*                               ****
SKDATASTPG 0330000  START PAGE FOR SSK-DATA-AREA
SKDATANMPG 600      NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR SSK-DATA-AREA
SKF1XTNT 1200,100  DISK SPACE FOR FILE "SSKFIL1"
MKEYPGSZ 4096     BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR MASTERKEY DATABASE
MKEYDSN   MASTRKEY.DATASEG DATASET NAME FOR MASTERKEY DB FILE
*                               ****
*                               *      ONLINE LOG DISPLAY  *
*                               ***    RUN-TIME      ***
*                               *      PARAMETERS    *
*                               ****
LOGDTSK     LOGD      TASK CODE TO INVOKE ONLINE LOG DISPLAY
*                               ****
*                               *      SASO          *
*                               ***    INSTALLATION   ***
*                               *      PARAMETERS    *
*                               ****
ESCTRLSTPG 8100001  START PAGE FOR ESS-CTRL-AREA
ESCTRLSTBK 1        START BLOCK FOR ESS-CTRL-AREA
ESCTRLNMPG 95       NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-CTRL-AREA
ESTEXTSTPG 8100101  START PAGE FOR ESS-TEXT-AREA
ESTEXTSTBK 96       START BLOCK FOR ESS-TEXT-AREA
ESTEXTNMPG 760      NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-TEXT-AREA
ESINDEXSTPG 8100901  START PAGE FOR ESS-INDEX-AREA
ESINDEXSTBK 856      START BLOCK FOR ESS-INDEX-AREA
ESINDEXNMPG 95       NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-INDEX-AREA
ESRELSESTPG 8101001  START PAGE FOR ESS-RELSE-AREA
ESRELSESTBK 1        START BLOCK FOR ESS-RELSE-AREA
ESRELSENMPG 240      NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-RELSE-AREA
ESRTEXTSTPG 8101301  START PAGE FOR ESS-RTEXT-AREA
ESRTEXTSTBK 241      START BLOCK FOR ESS-RTEXT-AREA
ESRTEXTNMPG 235      NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-RTEXT-AREA
ESCTRLDSTPG 8101601  START PAGE FOR ESS-CTRLD-AREA
ESCTRLDSTBK 1        START BLOCK FOR ESS-CTRLD-AREA
ESCTRLDNMPG 3        NUMBER OF PAGES FOR ESS-CTRLD-AREA
ESF1XTNT 1900,10    DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESSFIL1"
ESF2XTNT 950,10     DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESSFIL2"
ESF3XTNT 6,2         DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESSFIL3"
SASOPGSZ 4096      BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR SASO DATABASE

```

```

SASODSN1      SASO.PRIMARY   DATASET NAME FOR SASO DB FILE PRIMARY
SASODSN2      SASO.RELEASE   DATASET NAME FOR SASO DB FILE RELEASE
SASODSN3      SASO.DOCUMENT  DATASET NAME FOR SASO DB FILE DOCUMENT
SASOINTID     254           UNIQUE INTERNAL SASO DOCUMENT ID (36 TO 255)
SASODOCID    SPG           DBNAME FOR SASO IN DATABASE NAME TABLE
SASODOCDSN  SASO.SPGTEXT  DATASET NAME FOR SASO DOCUMENT FILE
*
*                                ****SASO*****
*                                ***RUN-TIME****
*                                *PARAMETERS* *
*
SASOTSK       SASO          TASK CODE TO INVOKE SASO
DEFDOC        SPG          DEFAULT DOCUMENT DBNAME TABLE ENTRY
*
*                                ****DESCRIBE WORK FILES*****
*
WRKAXTNT     60,30        SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRKA FILE
WRKBXTNT     60,30        SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRKB FILE
WRKCXTNT     2001,300     SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRKC FILE
WRK1XTNT     300,30       SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRK1 FILE
WRK2XTNT     300,30       SPACE ALLOCATION FOR WRK2 FILE
SYSVERNUM    90           SYSTEM VERSION NUMBER
NEWDMCL      NEWDMCL      NAME FOR NEW GLOBAL DMCL MODULE THAT WILL
*                          BE CREATED. SPECIFY A NEW NAME SO YOUR
*                          CURRENT PRODUCTION GLOBAL DMCL WILL NOT BE
*                          DESTROYED.
AUTHUSER      ""           AUTHORIZED USER ID FOR DICTIONARY SIGNON
AUTHUSERPW    ""           AUTHORIZED USER PASSWORD FOR DICT SIGNON
STORPROT     YES          STORPROT
TAPEVOL      FOGJOB      TAPE SERIALNO
/SET-JOB-STEP
/          ASS-SYSLST  TO=PRIMARY
/          ASS-SYSOPT  TO=PRIMARY
/          REM-FILE-LINK SYS001
/.ENDJ       EXIT-PROC

```

4.6 Step 5. Execute CAIJMP to Generate the Install JCL

The next step is to execute the CAIJMP program which will generate the tailored installation JCL. The SYSOPT output of the CAIJMP program contains all of the JCL required to install CA-IDMS Tools tailored to your installation requirements. Review this JCL carefully before proceeding with the next step. If the tailored JCL needs to be changed in any way, correct the appropriate CAIJMP parameter and execute CAIJMP again to generate new JCL. Once the generated JCL is correct, you can proceed with the install.

The CAIJMP program produces a listing which you should keep for future references as a documentation of the installation. The CAIJMP listing consists of three parts:

- 1. SYS001 Parameter Input**

Contains all of the possible CAIJMP input parameters and associated default values. Use this listing as a reference for parameters which may be required for special situations.

- 2. SYSIPT Parameter Input**

Contains the parameters specified to CAIJMP for this execution.

- 3. SYSOPT Output Listing**

Contains the tailored JCL produced by CAIJMP. All of the JCL required to install CA-IDMS Tools is included and you should retain for reference.

4.7 Step 6. Execute the Installation JCL

The next step is to execute the installation JCL produced by CAIJMP. The CA-IDMS Tools installation JCL consists of seven major jobs. Each job contains one or more job steps. Computer Associates recommends that the seven major jobs be run individually. You should check return codes from each job step within these major jobs prior to submitting the next major job.

The seven install jobs are separated by comments indicating the job number. Job card information is repeated prior to each job. Begin the install by submitting each job in sequence. The expected return codes for each step in the job are indicated as a comment after the EXEC statement for the job step.

The seven major jobs of the CA-IDMS Tools install are listed below.

4.7.1 Job 1

Allocate libraries and files — Job 1 performs the following allocation and definition steps:

- Allocates the CA-IDMS Tools dictionary (if necessary).
- Allocates the CA-IDMS Tools product database files.
- Allocates the CA-IDMS Tools installation DBMS libraries (the source library, link library, APAR library, macro library and load library).
- Allocates the ENFORCER load library.

4.7.2 Job 2

Offload install libraries

- Executes CAIPDS and loads the CA-IDMS Tools object and source modules from the encrypted and compressed files into the macro, source, link, APAR and load libraries.
- Creates the DBMSMOD utility in the DBA source library.
- Creates DBMS functions for customization and modification purposes.
- Downloads the CA-IDMS/SASO SPG text file (only if you install the SASO product).

4.7.3 Job 3

Customize CA-IDMS Tools — Job 3 runs a number of functions of the CA-IDMS Tools Customization and Modification Utility DBMSMOD.

Additional customization for CA-IDMS/DML Online is detailed below.

The runtime options are described in Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1.

If you modify the task code for CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator, CA-IDMS/Database Extractor or other products, remember to make the change to the appropriate SYSGEN module (xxxSYSGN member in your dbms.srclib) before running the SYSGEN step in Job 6. The modifications to the SYSGEN module are not done automatically. Use your editor to do this.

It is not possible to change the taskcode for DMLO.

4.7.3.1 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator

For Dictionary Migrator, you may decide to modify the migration options used to determine the extent of migration or the syntax format.

Note: Do not modify the migration options unless there are specific options you want to use.

4.7.3.2 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor

Modification of the LOCK parameter in USETPARM without specific recommendation of the CA-IDMS Product Support Staff is not recommended. You should always use the default, Y unless the CA-IDMS Product Support Staff recommends otherwise.

If you modify the LOCK parameter in USETPARM to LOCK=N, several users will be able to edit the module at the same time. It is also possible that a suspended session may exist while other users update a module. The results are unpredictable.

4.7.3.3 CA-IDMS/DML Online

You may choose from a large number of customization options for DML/O. These include:

- All session display and processing options
- Signon screen options
- Online documentation dictionary options
- Menu/Assist Mode screen format and specifications
- User exit usage
- Default PFkey assignments
- Default abbreviations
- Tailor USDMLXIT user error messages

There are six COPY statements in customization module USDTPARM that follow the specification of parameters for USDCPARM. Each of these COPY statements refers to a source module that allows you to further tailor CA-IDMS/DML Online to your

own requirements. These modules and the session characteristics that they control are as follows:

COPY Statement	Description
USD@DSPC	This module allows you to specify which characters are considered displayable on your terminal devices. Any characters not specified here will cause an 'INVALID DATA' condition.
USD@SSEX	This module allows you to exclude subschemas from access by CA-IDMS/DML Online. This exclusion is unconditional, and independent of any other security constraints.
USD@KYWD	This module allows you to define the standard abbreviations recognized by CA-IDMS/DML Online.
USD@MOPS	This module allows you to redefine the DML command codes recognized by the Menu/Assist mode of CA-IDMS/DML Online.
USD@MSTL	This module allows you to reformat the static area of the Menu/Assist Mode screen.
USD@MTXT	This module allows you to specify the instructional text that appears in the data area of the Menu/Assist Mode screen when this mode is first specified for the session. For more information, please refer to the <i>CA-IDMS/DML Online User Guide</i>

4.7.3.4 CA-IDMS/DC SORT

At installation time, the MAIN and AUX parameter are each assigned a value of 10000 bytes unless you changed the default values during Step 4: Modify Member CAIIJMP of BOOTLIB. During each sort session in an application, CA-IDMS/DC SORT acquires the main and auxiliary storage as necessary, up to the value assigned. (A session is defined by the session number in a SETSORT statement.) If you want to run the most efficient sorts possible, you should consider the following points.

The most efficient sort is one in which:

- There are many small records in a buffer
- All of the buffers reside in main storage

To increase efficiency in a given sort session, use a work record that contains only the fields necessary for sorting. With only those fields, the work record is as small as possible to meet the requirements.

In an ideal situation:

- Main storage is slightly larger than the space needed for an average sort
- Auxiliary storage adds the extra space needed for large sorts

Increasing the proportion of auxiliary storage to main storage may affect response time.

4.7.3.5 CA-IDMS/DC-SORT Customization

At execution time, CA-IDMS/DC SORT allocates sort buffers in multiples of 2000 bytes. To determine the size of a sort buffer:

1. Multiply the MINRBUF value times the record size.
2. Round the result up to the next multiple of 2000 bytes.
3. Add 12 bytes for CA-IDMS/DC SORT overhead.

The maximum sort buffer size can be no greater than 32K.

Note: CA-IDMS/DC SORT will not split a buffer between main and auxiliary storage. Therefore it is necessary to make efficient use of main and auxiliary storage.

The product of the MINRBUF value and the record length cannot exceed either the MAIN value or the AUX value, whichever is larger, because there would not be enough space to store one sort buffer.

In the following four examples, the MAIN and AUX parameters are not changed. The default for each is 10000 bytes.

Example 1

```
MINRBUF=20
record-length=100
The sort buffer used by the CA-IDMS/DC SORT will be 2012 bytes :
    20 * 100 = 2000
    2000 is a multiple of 2000
    2000 + 12 = 2012
CA-IDMS/DC SORT can store four sort buffers (80 records) in main
storage and four sort buffers (80 records) in auxiliary storage.
```

Example 2

```
MINRBUF=20
record-length=150
The sort buffer used by the CA-IDMS/DC SORT will be 4012 bytes :
    20 * 150 = 3000
    The next multiple of 2000 is 4000
    4000 + 12 = 4012
CA-IDMS/DC SORT can store two sort buffers (40 records) in main
storage and two sort buffers (40 records) in auxiliary storage.
```

Example 3

```
MINRBUF=100 (default)
record-length=31
The sort buffer used by the CA-IDMS/DC SORT will be 4012 bytes :
    31 * 100 = 3100
    next multiple of 2000 is 4000
    4000 + 12 = 4012
CA-IDMS/DC SORT can store two sort buffers (200 records) in main
storage and two sort buffers (200 records) in auxiliary storage.
```

Example 4

```
MINRBUF=100 (default)
record-length=51
The sort buffer used by the CA-IDMS/DC SORT will be 6012 bytes :
    51 * 100 = 5100
    next multiple of 2000 is 6000
    6000 + 12 = 6012
CA-IDMS/DC SORT can store one sort buffer (100 records) in main
storage and one sort buffer (100 records) in auxiliary storage.
```

4.7.4 Job 4

Perform SMP RECEIVE Processing

4.7.5 Job 5

Perform SMP APPLY Processing

4.7.6 Job 6

Build CA-IDMS Tools system environment — This job performs multiple product-specific database installation tasks. These tasks are described in detail in the CAIJMP output. Some tasks may result in a Return Code of 08. Check your output to determine the status of the specific product.

4.7.7 Job 7

Perform SMP ACCEPT Processing — This step must be run prior to applying maintenance or modifications to CA-IDMS Tools.

4.8 Steps 7 and 8. Install User Exits and Update the Dictionaries

You must install user exits for the following products:

- CA-IDMS/Masterkey
- CA-IDMS/ADS Alive
- CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer

You must update each dictionary for the following products:

- CA-IDMS/ADS TRACE
- CA-IDMS/DC SORT
- CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR
- CA-IDMS/DML ONLINE

4.8.1 USFUEXTX

If both CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer and CA-IDMS/Masterkey are being installed, change the macro USFUEXTX as follows:

USFUEXTM TYPE=CSECT,	X
USREXT0=(NO,,),	X
USREXT4=(YES,SSKXT04E,D),	X
USREXT5=(NO,,),	X
USREXTD=(NO,,),	X
USREXTF=(NO,,)	X

4.8.1.1 How to Assemble USFUEXTX

Enter the following command:

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbasrc,ELEM=USFUEXTX)
```

In EDT mode, change the macro USFUEXTX as described above.

Press K1 to save the macro source and to assemble the macro.

Press K2 to exit.

4.8.2 RHDCUXIT

The following discussion describes how to create a customized RHDCUXIT module for the Tool mix you are installing.

4.8.2.1 How to Assemble RHDCUXIT

Enter the following command:

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbasrc,ELEM=RHDCUXIT)
```

This procedure changes the RHDCUXIT source and assembles and linkedits the macro with user exit routines appropriate for the tools being installed.

Note: Although the specific modifications described below depend on the combination of products being installed, the following is the basic sequence of steps required for user exit definition:

Copy RHDCUXIT source sample from your &dbmssrc library to your first EDT prompt when executing the

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbasrc,ELEM=IDMSMOD),PROC-PAR=(FUNCTION=RHDCUXIT)
```

You can find the source sample in the following table:

Sample	For Products
RHDCUXIT	
Member	
TOOLXIT1	RHDCUXIT for (MASTERKEY)
TOOLXIT2	RHDCUXIT for (ADS ALIVE)
TOOLXIT3	RHDCUXIT for (MASTERKEY ADS ALIVE)
TOOLXIT4	RHDCUXIT for (TASK-ANALYZER)
TOOLXIT5	RHDCUXIT for (MASTERKEY TASK-ANALYZER)
TOOLXIT6	RHDCUXIT for (ADS ALIVE TASK-ANALYZER)
TOOLXIT7	RHDCUXIT for (MASTERKEY ADS ALIVE TASK-ANALYZER)

For more detailed explanation of RHDCUXIT coding conventions see the discussion of 'Numbered Exits' in the *CA-IDMS System Operations*

On the EDT prompt for the link member, you can use the following table.

Sample	For products
UXIT	
Linkmember	
TOOLLNK1	Link Control for (MASTERKEY)
TOOLLNK2	Link Control for (ADS ALIVE)
TOOLLNK3	Link Control for (MASTERKEY ADS ALIVE)

Sample	For products
UXIT	
Linkmember	
TOOLLNK4	Link Control for (TASK-ANALYZER)
TOOLLNK5	Link Control for (MASTERKEY TASK-ANALYZER)
TOOLLNK6	Link Control for (ADS ALIVE TASK-ANALYZER)
TOOLLNK7	Link Control for (MASTERKEY ADS ALIVE TASK-ANALYZER)

The following table lists the exit routines required for CA-IDMS Tools:

CA-IDMS Product	Exit Routine
CA-IDMS/Masterkey	SSK2IT04 SSK2IT06
CA-IDMS/ADS Alive	USG2333
CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer	USFEXT0 USFEXT3 USFEXT4 USFEXT5 USFEXTD USFEXTF USFEXTW USFUEXT

You must update each dictionary (primary or secondary) where CA-IDMS/ ADS TRACE will be executed.

4.8.3 Update the Dictionaries

You must update the default dictionary for each system under which you intend to run CA-IDMS/DC SORT and CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator.

You must update each dictionary for which you intend to execute CA-IDMS/DML Online with extended security and/or access restrictions.

To update the dictionary for CA-IDMS/ADS TRACE, CA-IDMS/DC SORT, and CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator:

1. Select input to IDMSDDDL for CA-IDMS/ADS TRACE. The input is found in the DBMS source library with member name ATDDDL.
2. Select input to IDMSDDDL for CA-IDMS/DC SORT. The input is found in the DBMS source library with member name TPSDDDL.

3. If you intend to use CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator to migrate to CA-IDMS/PC, select the member name GSIARPT8 in the DBMS source library as input to IDMSDDDL, adding it to your DIRLDICT.
4. Run IDMSDDDL.

You must update each dictionary for which you intend to execute CA-IDMS/DML Online with extended security and/or access restrictions. See Appendix G, “CA-IDMS/DMLO Security and Access Considerations” on page G-1 for a full discussion of updating the dictionary(ies) for CA-IDMS/DML Online.

4.9 Step 9. Modify Your Start-Up JCL: the FILE Procedure

1. Identify the CV in which the database tools for CA-IDMS are installed.
2. Add a /FILE statement for your **&dbmslod** library with a CDMSLIBn linkname in your start-up JCL for the identified CV.
3. Be sure that your **&dbmslod** comes after your DBA Loadlib in the CDMSLIB chain.
4. Please add the additional database files allocated in Step 6: Execute the Installation JCL in your FILE procedure with option SHARUPD=YES. Add the files for the databases used by:
 - CA-IDMS Tools Dictionary
 - CA-IDMS/Database Extractor
 - CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator
 - CA-IDMS/DML Online
 - CA-IDMS/Enforcer
 - CA-IDMS/Masterkey
 - CA-IDMS/SASO

Note: CA-IDMS 15.0 supports dynamic file allocation. See *CA-IDMS Installation and Maintenance — OS/390* for more information.

4.10 Step 10. Cycle Your CA-IDMS System

Cycle your CA-IDMS system.

4.11 Step 11. Install Default JCL

DICTIONARY MIGRATOR, DATABASE EXTRACTOR

Upon initial installation, you must install the default JCL used by CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator. Dictionary Migrator JCL is used for submission of Dictionary Migrator. The default Dictionary Migrator JCL is any JCL for Dictionary Migrator that you are already using, or the **dbms.srclib** member PROTOJCL.

Database Extractor JCL is used to execute the batch components of Database Extractor. The default Database Extractor JCL is USVEXEC to extract and load a database, USVPSPC to print extraction specifications, and USVPJCL to print extract and load JCL.

The JCL upload utilities, found in **dbms.srclib**, to upload Dictionary Migrator JCL and Database Extractor JCL and default JCL for each product are given below:

Product	Utility	Default JCL
Database Extractor	USVUJCL USVEXEC USVPSPC USVPJCL	
Dictionary Migrator	XDMBJCL	PROTOJCL

The JCL to upload model JCL to the Database Extractor database is contained in **dbms.srclib** member USVUJCL. Enter the following commands:

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbasrc,ELEM=FILE),PROC-PAR=(MODE=LOCAL)
```

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbmssrc,ELEM=USVUJCL)
```

The JCL to upload Dictionary Migrator default JCL is contained in **dbms.srclib** member XDMBJCL.

The PROTOJCL for Dictionary Migrator is called PROTOJCL, which you can find in your &dbms src library. (This JCL calls the member USMXTRCT.) Update this PROTOJCL for your own environments. Enter the following commands:

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbasrc,ELEM=FILE),PROC-PAR=(MODE=LOCAL)
```

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbmssrc,ELEM=XDMBJCL),PROC-PAR=(STEP=DEMO)
```

4.12 Step 12. Add Another SASO Document (Optional)

For details on how to add multiple documents see the *CA-IDMS/SASO User Guide*.

4.13 Step 13. Recover Library Space

Complete this step if you want to recover files and library space that was allocated but not used after this installation.

If the installation of the database tools is successful, you can erase your **bootlib** &**bootlib** library.

Erase also dbtext file used to upload SASO.

Erase also all the syslsts and sysouts created with this installation.

The Enforcer loadlib is empty and will not be used for this install (erase the free spaces), they can only be used for future purposes (base and/or maint installs).

Chapter 5. Usage Notes and Maintenance Guide for CA-IDMS Tools

5.1 General Notes	5-3
5.2 Additional SYSGEN Steps	5-5
5.2.1 Modify the SYSGEN SYSTEM Statement	5-5
5.2.2 Modify Storage Requirements	5-5
5.2.3 Modify By-task Statistics Records	5-5
5.2.4 Modify the SYSGEN ADSO Statement	5-6
5.2.5 Register Programs	5-6
5.2.6 Modify the Task Code	5-6
5.2.7 Implement Security for Dictionary Migrator and DBX	5-7
5.3 DBMSMOD Utility	5-8
5.4 DBMSMOD and Library Organization	5-12

5.1 General Notes

- With this installation only load modules are delivered. Object modules are not delivered.
- With this installation, we use the CA-IDMS loader IDMSLBS2 of CA-IDMS Release 15.0. This allows for chaining of 37 libraries, by specifying /ADD-FILE-LINK commands with LINK=CDMSLIBx. Valid characters for x are A-Z, 0-9 or blank. Cfr. the IDMS manual for BS2000 for more information.
- All libraries are PLAM libraries so different element types are available. Different versions for each element are also available. The highest version number is the most recent version. (If you do not specify the version number, the highest version is the default.) Only one version number per element will be unloaded. The current version for this install is 15000101. The SETDEFLB procedure does the customization and creates a version @.
- For a number of JCL procedures in your DBMS source library, there is a parameter, &STEP, with a default value of FILES. With this default value, the JCL procedure will prompt for the name of the parameter input file. If STEP=DEMO, then a demonstration of this procedure executes. An input file will be created automatically. The contents of the library are:

DEMO.ARCHIVE.JOURNAL	,type X
DEMO.ARCHIVE.LOG	,type X
DEMO.EMPDEMO	,type X
DEMO.INSDEMO	,type X
DEMO.ORGDEMO	,type X
DEMO.SASO.DBTEXT	,type X
DEMO.SASO.Rlse.DATA	,type X
DEMO.SASO.TEXT	,type X
DEMO.SYSIDMS	,type X
EMPDMCL	,type L
EMPSS01	,type L
R150DBTB	,type L

The UNLDDEMO procedure which unloads the demo library is located in your **&dbmssrc** library.

The command to access this library is:

```
/CALL-PROCEDURE (LIB=&dbmssrc,ELEM=UNLDDEMO)
```

- All batch output can be printed using the PRINT command with option SPACE=E, even when ASA control characters are used, because the RECFORM parameter of the printfile will be set to A in this case.
- Dictionary Migrator Assistant is a component of the CA-IDMS/ Dictionary Migrator. It contains the online portion of CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator.
- For **TASKA**:

Use USFECULP for your culprit reports (NOT USFPCULP!).

- For **CA-IDMS/Enforcer**:

When using LINKCUSB to customize the CA-IDMS utilities, consider the UNRESOLVED EXTERNAL message for IDCSACON a normal message.

There are demo CA-IDMS/Enforcer templates included with this tape. You can offload these templates with the DNLDENF procedure. Afterwards, you can upload these templates with the ESXULOD procedure with parameter STEP = DEMO.

These templates should be considered samples.

- For **CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator** and **CA-IDMS/Enforcer**: Dictionary Migrator cannot work with customized IDMS utilities created in Enforcer.

The solution is to move the IDMS utilities from your &dbalod library to a separate load library used only for CA-IDMS/Enforcer. Delete these modules from your &dbalod library so that Dictionary Migrator can use the original IDMS utilities from the IDMS load library.

- Also the TOOLSECR member will be offloaded into your DBMS source library.
- The COBOL source USDBCLST and its sample compile procedure, DOUSDCMP, are now available.
- The COBOL source members, USLBILX and USLRPTS, and the sample compile procedure, DOLOGCMP, are available.
- All source members are stored as type S, but all procedures and job streams are stored as type J into a PLAM library.

5.2 Additional SYSGEN Steps

Perform the following steps to modify your SYSGEN for the database tools:

1. Modify the SYSGEN SYSTEM statement (only for Loga & Taska).
2. Modify the SYSGEN ADSO statement (only for Loga and Taska).
3. Register programs (only if system registration is on).
4. Modify task code for DBX, CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator, CA-IDMS/ Enforcer, CA-IDMS/Masterkey and CA-IDMS/SASO (if you have modified the macro in Step 3).
5. Implement security for Dictionary Migrator and DBX (optional).
6. Execute your SYSGEN.

5.2.1 Modify the SYSGEN SYSTEM Statement

You must modify your sysgen SYSTEM statement to accommodate:

- Storage requirements for CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer
- CA-IDMS/Log Analyzer and CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer statistics gathering

5.2.2 Modify Storage Requirements

Before starting CA-IDMS/DC, consider the storage requirements in CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer that will affect the SYSGEN. These requirements include storage pool, program pool and stacksize. See the *CA-IDMS/ Task Analyzer User Guide* for more information.

Note: These requirements are critical to the proper functioning of your environment.

5.2.3 Modify By-task Statistics Records

Loga and Taska get their data for everything except dialogs from the by-task statistics records. Therefore, you must generate IDMS CV so that these statistics are gathered by CA-IDMS. Define the by-task statistics subparameter of the SYSTEM statement when generating IDMS CV. The minimum specification required is:

```
STATISTICS TASK WRITE  
          (COLLECT)
```

Note: If you are installing CA-IDMS/Log Analyzer, you must specify WRITE. For CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer, STATISTICS TASK COLLECT is sufficient.

The statements above normally cause the CV to write these statistics to the log. With Task Analyzer, this action is controlled by the DC STATISTICS option field of the Task Analyzer Statistics Plan Screen. See the *CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer User Guide* for more information.

5.2.4 Modify the SYSGEN ADSO Statement

Log Analyzer and Task Analyzer get their data for dialogs from the transaction statistics records. Therefore, you must generate IDMS CV so that these statistics are gathered by CA-IDMS.

You define dialog statistics to be gathered by CA-IDMS in the DIALOG subparameter of the ADSO statement when gathering IDMS CV. The minimum specification required is:

```
DIALOG STATISTICS ON      ALL  
                           ( SELECTED )
```

Note: If you specify SELECTED, Log Analyzer and Task Analyzer will only be able to report on dialogs that are defined with a PROGRAM statement that specifies ADSO DIALOG STATISTICS ON.

5.2.5 Register Programs

If you have program registration turned on in your system, then you must register each product you are installing.

Note: You only need to register each product you are installing if you have program registration turned on.

5.2.6 Modify the Task Code

If you modified the task code name of the following table in the earlier installation step, modify the task name in the corresponding SYSGEN member. The member names for each product are shown in the table below:

Component	TPARM	SYSGEN	Task Code
ADS Alive	USGTPARM	USGSYSGN	ADSALIVE
Database Extractor	USVTPARM	USVSYSGN	DBX
Dictionary Migrator Assistant	XDMTPARM	XDMSYSGN	DMA
Dictionary Module Editor	USETPARM	USESYSGN	DME
ENFORCER	ESXTPARM	ESXSYSGN	ENFORCER
SASO	ESSTPARM	ESSSYSGN	SASO
DC SORT	TPSPARM	TPSSYSGN	TPSG
Dictionary Query Facility	DADTPARM	DADSYSGN	DQF
Online Log Display	USKTPARM	USKSYSGN	LOGD

5.2.7 Implement Security for Dictionary Migrator and DBX

To prevent Dictionary Migrator and DBX users from copying other users' parameter files (PARMFILES), assign DC security to the program XDMAXCP.

5.3 DBMSMOD Utility

During the installation process a BS2000 procedure "DBMSMOD" is created in the DBA source library. The procedure calls CA-IDMS Tools functions which define or modify a number of CA-IDMS Tools parameters and options, or apply modifications to the CA-IDMS Tools software.

Calling a DBMSMOD function will result in the execution of a number of BS2000 utility programs (EDT, LMS, BINDER). The output is placed in the file &SYSLSTP..&FUNCTION (&SYSLSTP is a procedure parameter preset to T.SYSLST; &FUNCTION is the name of the actual called function).

The individual functions are implemented as procedures with identical names in the DBA source library. Direct execution of the procedures is also possible.

Please note that almost all DBMSMOD functions are called as part of the installation process.

The following DBMSMOD functions are available:

Function	Description
APPLYAPB	<p>Apply an APAR to the Tools software. An APAR (also referred to as a PTF or a REP) modifies a Tools load module.</p> <p>An APAR must exist as a source member of a PLAM library, called the APAR library. This library is created during installation.</p> <p>An APAR must have the following format:</p> <pre style="margin-left: 40px;">++APAR (aparnum) ++VER (Z038) FMID(component) ++ZAP (objname) DISTLIB(DISTLOAD) NAME csectnam IDRDATA aparnum BASE 000000 VER AAAA VVVV, VVVV REP AAAA RRRR, RRRR</pre> <p>where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> aparnum is the number of the APAR compont is the component to which the object "objname" belongs objname is the name of the object to REP csectnam is the name of the CSECT to REP AAAAA is the address relative to the start of the CSECT VVVV is verify information RRRR is replace information <p>Verify and repair information can be up to 16 bytes and must match in length. The function uses LMS UPDR and *CORR statements, where the APAR member name will also be the LMS identification ID. All LMS functions can be used to manage APARS.</p>
DADTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the DADTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Dictionary Query Facility runtime options.
ESSTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the ESSTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/SASO runtime options.
ESXTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the ESXTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Enforcer runtime options.
GSDTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the GSDTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/DBIO runtime options.

Function	Description
LINKCUSB	Contains the possible customer links.
REMOVAPB	This is the inverse function of the APPLYAPB function. An applied APAR will be removed.
SETDEFLB	Set default values for the parameters of most of the JCL procedures. Refer to the procedure in your DBA source library for more information.
SSKTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the SSKTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Masterkey runtime options.
TPSPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the TPSPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/DC SORT runtime options.
USDTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the USDTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/DML Online runtime options.
USETPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the USETPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor runtime options.
USFUEEXTX	Edit, modify, compile and link the USFUEEXTX. Refer to Chapter 4, “CA-IDMS Tools Installation Steps” on page 4-1 for more information on USFUEEXTX.
USGTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the USGTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/ADS Alive runtime options.
USKTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the USKTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Online Log Display runtime options.
USMEXCLT	Edit, modify, compile and link the USMEXCLT. Customize the Entity Exclusion Table for Dictionary Migrator.
USMSGSVT	Edit, modify, compile and link the USMSGSVT. Customize the Message Severity Level Table for Dictionary Migrator.
USMTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the USMTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator runtime options.

Function	Description
USVTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the USVTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Database Extractor runtime options.
XDMTPARM	Edit, modify, compile and link the XDMTPARM. Refer to Appendix F, “CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options” on page F-1 for more information on CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Assistant runtime options.

5.4 DBMSMOD and Library Organization

In Release 15.0 of CA-IDMS, the organization of the library is altered slightly by the installation. An effort has been made to clearly separate those libraries which contain common, infrequently changed members and libraries which contain system specific members.

The advantage of this organization is that the setup and the maintenance of new systems or environments, for development, production, and tests is much easier. Additionally, a large part of the software can be shared by different systems.

The DBA libraries contain the system specific software. For the CA-IDMS Tools products, the global libraries are contained in the DBMS libraries.

These correspond with the IDMS libraries from the CA-IDMS Release 15.0 products. After installation, the following libraries are populated:

- DBMS APAR library
- DBMS source library
- DBMS macro library
- DBMS link library
- DBMS load library

Similar to an IDMS installation, all members created by the DBMSMOD functions (except APPLYAPB and REMOVAPB) are put in the DBA libraries. When a function requires a source medium to be edited, the source will first be extracted from the DBA library. If the source does not exist in the DBA library, it is extracted from the DBMS source library. In either case, the result of the edit is placed in the DBA library.

APPLYAPB and REMOVAPB use the DBMS aparlib and the DBMS loadlib.

The DBMS loadlib is updated only when an APAR is applied to or removed from a customized module.

Chapter 6. Maintenance Process

6.1	Release 15.0 and above Product Requirements	6-3
6.2	Required Installation Materials	6-4
6.2.1	Maintenance Installation Tape	6-4
6.2.2	BS2000 Product Requirements	6-4
6.3	Library Types and LMS Member Types	6-5
6.4	Maintenance Methodology	6-6
6.4.1	Meaning of Member Versions	6-6
6.4.1.1	All CA-IDMS and DBA Libraries	6-6
6.4.1.2	All CA-IDMS Tools and DBA Libraries	6-7
6.4.1.3	CA-IDMS Load Library Only	6-7
6.4.1.4	CA-IDMS Tools Load Library Only	6-7
6.4.1.5	CA-IDMS APAR Library Only	6-7
6.4.1.6	CA-IDMS Tools APAR Library Only	6-8
6.5	Maintenance Phases	6-9
6.5.1	INIT	6-9
6.5.2	RECEIVE	6-9
6.5.3	REJECT	6-9
6.5.4	APPLY	6-9
6.5.5	RESTORE	6-10
6.5.6	ACCEPT	6-10
6.6	Maintenance Requirements Checklist	6-11
6.7	CA-IDMS Maintenance Installation Steps	6-12
6.7.1	Overview of Installation Steps	6-12
6.7.2	Steps 1 and 2. System Requirements	6-12
6.7.3	Step 3. Offload all Files from Tape	6-13
6.7.4	Step 4. ACCEPT the Previous Maintenance	6-13
6.7.5	Step 5. Adapt the base IJMP Procedure File	6-14
6.7.6	Step 6. Execute Procedure P-MAINT	6-14
6.7.7	Step 7. Offload the CCI.LIB From Tape	6-18
6.8	CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance Installation Steps	6-19
6.8.1	Overview of Installation Steps	6-19
6.8.2	Steps 1 and 2. System Requirements	6-19
6.8.3	Step 3. Offload all Files from Tape	6-20
6.8.4	Step 4. ACCEPT the Previous Maintenance	6-20
6.8.5	Step 5. Adapt the Base IJMP Procedure File	6-21
6.8.6	Step 6. Execute Procedure P-MAINT	6-21
6.9	Remarks for CA-IDMS Tools	6-25
6.9.1	P-MAINT Maintenance Procedure	6-25
6.9.2	Special members	6-25

6.1 Release 15.0 and above Product Requirements

In order to apply this maintenance tape, you need the most recent maintenance level for your CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools system 15.0 and above. You can order this maintenance installation package from your local Computer Associates CA-IDMS Product Group.

Once installed, you can then apply the maintenance for the CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools Product line.

6.2 Required Installation Materials

6.2.1 Maintenance Installation Tape

The machine readable program materials required for this maintenance installation are distributed on a multiple file tape.

In order to perform the installation, the tape format requires standard BS2000 and Computer Associates' utilities.

6.2.2 BS2000 Product Requirements

The following table lists the different BS2000 prerequisite products and versions for CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools:

Product	Version
ASSEMBLER	H any version
LMS	V3.2 or higher
TIAM	V11.2 or higher
EDT	V16.6 or higher
SORT	V7.5 or higher
DCAM	V13.0 or higher
COBOL85	any version

In addition to the products listed above CA-IDMS Tools also requires the following:

Product	Version
BS2000	OSD V2.0 or higher

In addition to the products listed above CA-IDMS also requires the following:

Product	Version
BS2000	V2.0 or higher
ARCHIVE	V2.8A or higher

6.3 Library Types and LMS Member Types

CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools have these library and LMS member types.

CA-IDMS source library: This library contains a number of assembler sources, JCL procedures, report definitions and system definitions used in the base installation process. The library also contains both LMS type S and type J members.

CA-IDMS macro library: This library contains macros and also all DSECTs required to assemble CA-IDMS tables, programs and system exits. The library contains only LMS type M members.

CA-IDMS load library: This library contains all the runtime load modules, maps, tables and dialogs required in the CA-IDMS environment. The library contains LMS type L members. For compatibility reasons it also contains some type R members. Please note that CA-IDMS load modules are stored as BS2000 relocatable modules or objects.

CA-IDMS APAR library: You install this library with the first maintenance tape. The library contains all APARs. An APAR is a special CA-IDMS member type that functions like a zap. They contain corrections for load modules in the form of VER/REP pairs. APARs increase the integrity of the CA-IDMS load libraries. The CA-IDMS APAR library contains only LMS type S members.

DBA source library: This library contains all JCL procedures and sources that the DBA customizes. The library contains both LMS type S and type J members.

DBA load library: This library contains all load modules created during the CA-IDMS customization and modification. The library contains only LMS type L members.

CA-IDMS Tools contains the following library in addition to the ones listed above:

CA-IDMS Tools link library: This library contains macros and also all DSECTs required to assemble CA-IDMS tables, programs and system exits. The library contains only LMS type S members.

This list shows the library types and the parameters that define them for CA-IDMS Tools:

- Source library — dbmssrc
- Macro library — dbmsmac
- Load library — dbmslod
- APAR library — dbmsapa
- Link library — dbmslnk

6.4 Maintenance Methodology

To ensure a consistent set of modules after the maintenance application, use the following methodology:

Consistent library state: All changes made by the DBA to the CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools libraries delete in reverse order. This guarantees that after the maintenance application no APAR is partially applied. You can, for example, have an APAR on two modules. One module may have a new version on the maintenance tape. If the other module does not have a new version on the tape, then the APAR remains applied. Deleting in reverse order prevents this from happening.

Automatic APAR validation: The maintenance process identifies all APARS previously applied by the DBA. It then checks for the APARS' existence on the maintenance tape. If the maintenance process can not locate the APAR on the tape, it tries to apply the APAR. If the VERIFY matches, the maintenance process reapplies the APAR as a DBA APAR. If the VERIFY does not match, the maintenance process marks the APAR as an error. The DBA then needs to resolve the problem.

PLAM member versions: PLAM member versions play an important role in the maintenance process. You use member versions to identify the maintenance level and also the modifications made to the CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools software. The DBA should not change member versions using LMS. Always use the IDMSMOD procedure to apply customization for CA-IDMS and DBMSMOD to apply customization for CA-IDMS Tools.

6.4.1 Meaning of Member Versions

6.4.1.1 All CA-IDMS and DBA Libraries

In all CA-IDMS and DBA libraries, you use the following member versions:

- 15000100 — Member installed from the CA-IDMS 15.0 base tape
- 1500nn00 — Member installed from the CA-IDMS 15.0 maintenance tape
- @ — Highest version created by the DBA. All members in the DBA libraries have this version. Load modules in the CA-IDMS load libraries that the DBA created through the IDMSMOD function APPLYAPA also have this version.

With LMS you can easily verify from which maintenance tape a member originated.

6.4.1.2 All CA-IDMS Tools and DBA Libraries

In all CA-IDMS Tools and DBA libraries, you use the following member versions:

- 15000101 — Member installed from the CA-IDMS Tools 15.0 base tape
- 1500nn01 — Member installed from the CA-IDMS Tools 15.0 maintenance tape
- @ — Highest version created by the DBA. All members in the DBA libraries have this version. Load modules in the CA-IDMS Tools load libraries that the DBA created through the DBMSMOD function APPLYAPB also have this version.

With LMS you can easily verify from which maintenance tape a member originated.

6.4.1.3 CA-IDMS Load Library Only

The following member versions may also exist during the maintenance cycle, but only for the CA-IDMS load library:

PRE-1500nn00: If the DBA creates the load module using the IDMSMOD APPLYAPA function, then the load module gets version @. The maintenance process renames version @ to version PRE-1500nn00 during its RECEIVE step. This version is now inactive, because the maintenance process uses the 1500nn00 version from the maintenance tape instead. ACCEPT processing deletes this inactive version.

6.4.1.4 CA-IDMS Tools Load Library Only

The following member versions may also exist during the maintenance cycle, but only for the CA-IDMS Tools load library:

PRE-1500nn01: If the DBA creates the load module using the DBMSMOD APPLYAPB function, then the load module gets version @. The maintenance process renames version @ to version PRE-1500nn01 during its RECEIVE step. This version is now inactive, because the maintenance process uses the 1500nn01 version from the maintenance tape instead. ACCEPT processing deletes this inactive version.

6.4.1.5 CA-IDMS APAR Library Only

The following member versions may also exist during the maintenance cycle, but only for the CA-IDMS APAR library:

INC-1500nn00: The DBA creates an APAR using the IDMSMOD APPLYAPA function. The member version then includes the APAR because the maintenance level is 1500nn00.

RECEIVE processing assumes all APARs created by the DBA are on the current maintenance level. APPLY processing verifies that the APAR is really applied.

CHK-1500nn00: The DBA creates an APAR, but the APAR does not exist on the current maintenance level. APPLY processing tries to reapply the APAR. When it does reapply the APAR, the version changes back to the highest version @.

This member version exists only for a short time during APPLY processing.

ERR-1500nn00: The DBA creates an APAR, but the APAR does not exist on the current maintenance level. APPLY processing tries to reapply the APAR. If VER is not possible, then APPLY processing can not reapply the APAR. During its routine, APPLY processing creates a list of all the APARs with this version.

The DBA can also use the LMS command 'TOCS */ERR-1500nn00' to retrieve this same list.

6.4.1.6 CA-IDMS Tools APAR Library Only

The following member versions may also exist during the maintenance cycle, but only for the CA-IDMS Tools APAR library:

INC-1500nn01: The DBA creates an APAR using the DBMSMOD APPLYAPB function. The member version then includes the APAR because of the maintenance level of CA-IDMS Tools release 15.0: 1500nn01.

RECEIVE processing assumes all APARs created by the DBA are on the current maintenance level. APPLY processing verifies that the APAR is really applied.

CHK-1500nn01: The DBA creates an APAR, but the APAR does not exist on the current maintenance level. APPLY processing tries to reapply the APAR. When it does reapply the APAR, the version changes back to the highest version @.

This member version exists only for a short time during APPLY processing.

ERR-1500nn01: The DBA creates an APAR, but the APAR does not exist on the current maintenance level. APPLY processing tries to reapply the APAR. If VER is not possible, then APPLY processing can not reapply the APAR. During its routine, APPLY processing creates a list of all the APARs with this version.

The DBA can also use the LMS command 'TOCS */ERR-1500nn01' to retrieve this same list.

6.5 Maintenance Phases

You install maintenance tapes using a BS2000 procedure, P-MAINT, by following these steps for CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools:

- INIT
- RECEIVE
- REJECT
- APPLY
- RESTORE
- ACCEPT

You can find this P-MAINT procedure in your CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS TOOLS Boot Library.

6.5.1 INIT

Execute this function as the first step. INIT completes some of the initialization for the subsequent steps. It retrieves the base installation IJMP parameters and also sets the default procedure parameter values.

6.5.2 RECEIVE

RECEIVE checks the CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools (also called: 'execution') libraries and marks all the user applied APARs as included on the current maintenance level. This logically backs out all the user modifications to the libraries. You need this to guarantee a consistent set of members in the library after applying the maintenance.

The RECEIVE step also loads the libraries with all new or modified members from the maintenance files. The APPLY step handles the user APARs that do not exist on the maintenance tape.

6.5.3 REJECT

Execute this function to undo all effects of the RECEIVE processing.

6.5.4 APPLY

You usually execute this function after a successful RECEIVE. First, the maintenance process identifies all the APARs that the DBA applied and that do not exist on the maintenance tape. APPLY then tries to reapply the APAR using the IDMSMOD APPLYAPA function for CA-IDMS and the DBMSMOD APPLYAPA function for CA-IDMS Tools. Next the dictionary and DBA loadlib maintenance runs.

6.5.5 RESTORE

Execute this function to undo all the effects of the APPLY processing.

6.5.6 ACCEPT

Execute this function after successfully testing the maintenance, but before applying the next one. This step cleans up the libraries by deleting all obsolete member versions. Once you complete this step, you can no longer undo the maintenance.

6.6 Maintenance Requirements Checklist

To allow for a successful execution of the maintenance process, your system needs to meet the following conditions:

- The CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools source, macro and load libraries and also the DBA source and load libraries must be PLAM libraries.
- The DBA should not use LMS to change member versions in the CA-IDMS libraries. Only use the install and maintenance procedures to make updates to the CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools libraries.
- Do not split the CA-IDMS or CA-IDMS Tools load library over different libraries. The maintenance process can only handle one. If you do have different libraries, merge them into one. This does not affect user libraries.
- During the maintenance process, make sure a CA-IDMS system, batch or dialog task does not use the CA-IDMS, CA-IDMS Tools or DBA libraries. You need to run the maintenance process on a backup copy of the libraries. The maintenance process itself, however, is designed to be restartable. If you do not run ACCEPT, then you can reset the libraries to their original status.
- If you use CA-IDMS subsystems, regenerate them using the IDMSMOD PREPSUBS function. Recycle the subsystem(s) just as you would after the application of any APAR on a module within a subsystem.

For CA-IDMS your system also needs to meet this condition:

- The DBA must apply APARs on the CA-IDMS load library if the maintenance process needs to automatically validate the APARs. The DBA applied APARs should reside in the CA-IDMS APAR library with the version @. If no CA-IDMS APAR library exists, you need to create it before starting with the maintenance installation process.

For CA-IDMS Tools your system also needs to meet this condition:

- The DBA must apply APARs on the CA-IDMS Tools load library if the maintenance process needs to automatically validate the APARs. Keep this library different from the CA-IDMS APAR library. The DBA applied APARs should reside in the CA-IDMS Tools APAR library with the version @. If no CA-IDMS Tools APAR library exists, you need to create it before starting with the maintenance installation process.

6.7 CA-IDMS Maintenance Installation Steps

This section describes the steps required to install this maintenance release for the CA-IDMS product line on a BS2000 system. Please review the first part of this chapter 6.7.1, “Overview of Installation Steps,” before beginning the maintenance installation process.

6.7.1 Overview of Installation Steps

The following list summarizes the steps involved in the maintenance installation process. Review this list before you begin the installation:

- **Step 1**

Review the maintenance installation package cover letter and any included PIBs for pertinent installation information.

- **Step 2**

Review all CA-IDMS and BS2000 product and system requirements as described in Chapter 2, “System Requirements” on page 2-1 and 3.3, “Step 2. Review System Requirements” on page 3-7.

- **Step 3**

Offload all files from the maintenance tape to disk.

- **Step 4**

Accept the previous maintenance.

- **Step 5**

Adapt the base IJMP procedure file.

- **Step 6**

Execute the Global Maintenance Procedure P-MAINT from the BOOT Library.

- **Step 7**

Offload the CCI.LIB from tape.

The remainder of this chapter describes the installation steps in detail.

6.7.2 Steps 1 and 2. System Requirements

Verify that your system meets all requirements before beginning the installation process.

6.7.3 Step 3. Offload all Files from Tape

To start the CA-IDMS maintenance installation process, copy and rename all files from tape to disk using the following JCL:

JCL (BS2000)

```

/      ASS-SYSDTA  TO=SYSCMD
/      ASS-SYSLST  TO=1stfile
/      START-ARCHIVE
PARAM STREAM=YES,CATID=NO
F NA=($DBDC.mntpref.,RENAME=mntpref.)
IMPORT LIST=BOTH,REPLACE=YES,DEVICE=T-C4,FROM=(volume)
END

1stfile = file name of the SYSLST file
volume = volume name of the tape
mntpref = the maintenance prefix for the CA-IDMS installation
is the volume serial number, which is F0GJsM. F0 represents Release
15.0; GJ is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS;
s is the service pack; M indicates a maintenance tape.

```

After execution of this JCL, the following maintenance files offload:

- **mntpref.APARFILE**
- **mntpref.BOOTLIB**
- **mntpref.LOADFILE**
- **mntpref.SRCFILE**

6.7.4 Step 4. ACCEPT the Previous Maintenance

Execute Procedure P-MAINT to accept the previous maintenance level using this JCL:

ACCEPT the previous maintenance (BS2000)

```

/CALL-PROCEDURE mntpref.BOOTLIB(P-MAINT),FUNCTION=INIT
  Next Function to execute = STOP
/CALL-PROCEDURE mntpref.BOOTLIB(P-MAINT),FUNCTION=ACCEPT,    -
/   MNTVERS=1500nn00
  Next Function to execute = STOP

```

mntpref = maintenance prefix
1500nn00 = previous version number (e.g., if you are installing the fifth maintenance version, of IDMS 15.0, 15000500, then enter the fourth maintenance version number of IDMS 15.0, 15000400)

First INIT sets defaults. (For more information, see 6.7.5, “Step 5. Adapt the base IJMP Procedure File” on page 6-14). Then ACCEPT deletes all obsolete members of the CA-IDMS load, macro and source library. If in a library a member has versions 15000100 and 1500nn00, for example, only the most recent version 1500nn00 remains after the ACCEPT.

You need to execute this step **before** starting receive processing. You can skip this step if your previous install was a CA-IDMS base install.

6.7.5 Step 5. Adapt the base IJMP Procedure File

The passwords for this maintenance install differ from those on previous tapes (see Authorization Sheets). Adapt the passwords in the base IJMP procedure file. You use this file in the P-MAINT procedure (step 6) to determine which items, for example parameters, CA-products and passwords were installed at your site.

6.7.6 Step 6. Execute Procedure P-MAINT

After you offload all files from the maintenance tape to disk, use this JCL to start the maintenance installation process:

```
execute P-MAINT procedure (BS2000)
/CALL-PROCEDURE mntpref.BOOTLIB(P-MAINT)
mntpref = maintenance prefix
```

When calling P-MAINT, the maintenance process executes INIT as the first FUNCTION. If you already completed the INIT function in step 4 (accepting the previous maintenance), you do not need to repeat the step. When executing, the INIT function prompts you for this list of parameters:

Parameters	Descriptions
&STEDTNAM	The start command of the Editor program (START-EDT for example).

Parameters	Descriptions
&IJMPARMF	<p>Name of the base IJMP procedure file containing all CAIIJMP input parameters. This file was used to install the CA-IDMS Release 15.0 and above product line. You now use the file to determine which of those products were installed at your site. This file also obtains the names of your execution libraries (INDLOADDSN LOADLIB for example), your BS2000 utilities (STLMSNAM START-LMS for example) and your passwords.</p>
	<p>Prior to running the INIT function, make sure the passwords in the IJMP file change with the new passwords for this maintenance install.</p>
	<p>The last item the IJMP file finds is BSJCARD5. This has a default value of RESOURCES=PAR(CPU-LIMIT=NO) and P-MAINT stores this value in its &ENTPARM parameter. The value contains the /ENTER-JOB parameters used for the batch processing.</p>
	<p>Note: &IJMPARMF should be a sequential disk file.</p>
&MNTPREF	<p>This is the maintenance prefix and you should use the same one as you did in 6.7.3, “Step 3. Offload all Files from Tape” on page 6-13.</p>
&BASPREF	<p>Prefix used during the base installation of the CA-IDMS Release 15.0 and above.</p>
&SYSTEM	<p>A dbname which contains the segment SYSTEM. The default value is SYSTEM.</p>
&APPLDICT	<p>A dbname which contains the segment APPLDICT. Usually, it is named APPLDICT.</p>
&SYSDIRL	<p>A dbname which contains the segment SYSDIRL. Usually, it is named SYSDIRL.</p>

Parameters	Descriptions
&ASFDICT	A dbname which contains the segment ASFDICT. The default value is ASFDICT.

After execution of the INIT function, you can proceed with the maintenance installation process. You can install by using the interactive (**&PROCEED=I**) method or by using the batch (**&PROCEED=B**) method.

Interactive Processing: If you use interactive processing, then the P-MAINT procedure calls itself again and prompts you for the next FUNCTION. P-MAINT repeats this self-calling process after the termination of each FUNCTION until you enter **STOP**.

When you select the APPLY or RECEIVE functions, P-MAINT prompts you for an operation mode to perform the dictionary maintenance. You can use either **CENTRAL** or **LOCAL**.

Use the following sequence of functions:

1. **INIT** function
2. **RECEIVE** function
3. **APPLY** function
4. **STOP** function

Please note that P-MAINT prompts you several times in EDT mode. You need to press K1 to proceed.

Batch Processing: If you use batch processing, a list of FUNCTIONS displays. You can then select any number of FUNCTIONS to execute in the batch. The FUNCTIONS execute in the same sequence as they appear in the list. When you press ENTER/HALT or K1, you create an ENTER-file with all the selected FUNCTION-calls. After creating the ENTER-file, you then receive a prompt to submit the batch. Answering YES submits the ENTER-file with the same /ENTER-JOB parameters as specified in the P-MAINT parameter: **&ENTPARM**.

The name of this ENTER-file is: **&MNTPREF.ENTER.BATCHMAINT**

If you select the APPLY function as part of the batch, the default operation mode for the dictionary maintenance is LOCAL.

Recalling P-MAINT: Recalling P-MAINT for batch processing is only valid after execution of the INIT function. During INIT processing the P-MAINT procedure saves the value of the parameter &PROCEED. Depending on the value of &PROCEED, the following applies when recalling P-MAINT:

- **&PROCEED=I** – Interactive processing of the P-MAINT procedure with the prompting as described above.
- **&PROCEED=B** – The P-MAINT procedure prompts you for a FUNCTION to execute and creates an ENTER-file with the specified FUNCTION-call. Again, you submit the ENTER-file in the batch with the same /ENTER-JOB parameters as specified in the parameter &ENTPARM. After you do this the P-MAINT procedure stops.

The name of the ENTER-file is: **&MNTPREF.ENTER.&FUNCTION**.

If you select the APPLY function, the default operation mode for the dictionary maintenance is LOCAL.

EDT Interface: You use the EDT interface when running the CA-IDMS utilities for this maintenance process. The maintenance process uses it in the procedures 'P-BCF' and 'P-DDDL'. If you run the P-MAINT procedure in interactive processing (if **PROCEED** parameter equals 'T'), then it prompts you in EDT mode for these procedures.

You can make additional updates by modifying or inserting lines into work file \$0. Normally all necessary updates for this maintenance step already exist in this workfile \$0.

Press Enter and then K1 to proceed to the Update.

Press K2 to Exit (to stop). The P-MAINT procedure stops. Please note that you need to redo this step. You do this by adapting the P-MAINT procedure on a temporary file. First you redo the step that you stopped and then you restart this temporary file to continue.

After pressing K1 the EDT mode prompts you again to see the results of the update in workfile \$1 (workfile \$0 is deleted). If you did the update correctly, then you can continue by pressing K1. The EDT interface then terminates (because workfile \$0 is empty) and the maintenance procedure continues.

If you updated incorrectly, then you need to try the update again. You can redo it by recreating workfile \$0 with the additional or adapted requirements. Once you successfully made the updates, press K1. This process continues until you update successfully.

Remember that all your updates on workfile \$0 accumulate into workfile \$5 and all the results from workfile \$1 accumulate into workfile \$6.

If you run P-MAINT procedure in batch processing (if **PROCEED** parameter equals 'B'), then EDT mode does not prompt you and no additional updates are possible.

6.7.7 Step 7. Offload the CCI.LIB From Tape

If you have not done a maintenance install of the product **CA-IDMS/SERVER**, you need to skip this step.

To start the CA-IDMS/SERVER installation process, copy and rename the CCI.LIB from tape to disk using the following JCL:

JCL (BS2000)

```
/
    ASS-SYSDTA  TO=*>SYSCMD
/
    ASS-SYSLST  TO=lstfile
/
    START-PROG $ARCHIVE
PARAM STREAM=YES,CATID=NO
F NA=($DBDC.CCI.LIB,RENAME=CCI.LIB)
IMPORT LIST=BOTH,REPLACE=YES,DEVICE=T-C4,FROM=(volume)
END
```

lstfile = file name of the SYSLST file
volume = volume name of the tape

After execution of this JCL, the following PLAM library offloads:

- **CCI.LIB**

6.8 CA-IDMS Tools Maintenance Installation Steps

This section describes the steps required to install this maintenance release for the CA-IDMS product line on a BS2000 system. Please review the first part of this chapter 6.8.1, “Overview of Installation Steps,” before beginning the maintenance installation process.

6.8.1 Overview of Installation Steps

The following list summarizes the steps involved in the maintenance installation process. Review this list before you begin the installation:

- **Step 1**

Review the maintenance installation package cover letter and any included PIBs for pertinent installation information.

- **Step 2**

Review all CA-IDMS Tools and BS2000 product and system requirements as described in Chapter 2, “System Requirements” on page 2-1 and 4.3, “Step 2. System Requirements” on page 4-7.

- **Step 3**

Offload all files from the maintenance tape to disk.

- **Step 4**

Accept the previous maintenance.

- **Step 5**

Adapt the base IJMP procedure file.

- **Step 6**

Execute the Global Maintenance Procedure P-MAINT from the Tools BOOT Library.

The remainder of this chapter describes the installation steps in detail.

6.8.2 Steps 1 and 2. System Requirements

Verify that your system meets all requirements before beginning the installation process.

6.8.3 Step 3. Offload all Files from Tape

To start the CA-IDMS Tools maintenance installation process, copy and rename all files from tape to disk using the following JCL:

JCL (BS2000)

```
          .      ASS-SYSDTA  TO=SYSCMD
          /      ASS-SYSLST  TO=lstfile
          /      START-ARCHIVE
PARAM STREAM=YES,CATID=NO
F NA=($DB15.mntpref.,RENAME=mntpref.)
IMPORT LIST=BOTH,REPLACE=YES,DEVICE=T-C4,FROM=(volume)
END
```

lstfile = file name of the SYSLST file
volume = volume name of the tape
mntpref = the maintenance prefix for the CA-IDMS Tools installation is F0WIsm. F0 represents Release 15.0; WI is the Computer Associates two-character product ID for CA-IDMS Tools; s is the service pack; M indicates a maintenance tape.

After execution of this JCL, the maintenance process offloads these maintenance files:

- **mntpref.APAFILE**
- **mntpref.BOOTLIB**
- **mntpref.LNKFILE**
- **mntpref.LODFILE**
- **mntpref.SRCFILE**

6.8.4 Step 4. ACCEPT the Previous Maintenance

Execute Procedure P-MAINT to accept the previous maintenance level using this JCL:

ACCEPT the previous maintenance (BS2000)

```
/CALL-PROC (LIB=mntpref.BOOTLIB,ELEM=P-MAINT),PROC-PAR=(FUNCTION=INIT)
  Next Function to execute = STOP
/CALL-PROC (LIB=mntpref.BOOTLIB,ELEM=P-MAINT),PROC-PAR=(FUNCTION=ACCEPT,-
  ,MNTVERS=1500nn01)
  Next Function to execute = STOP

mntpref = maintenance prefix
1500nn01 = previous version number (for example, if you are
installing the fifth maintenance version, 15000501, then enter the
fourth maintenance version number, 15000401)
```

First the INIT sets defaults (for more information, see Step 5). Then ACCEPT deletes all obsolete members of the CA-IDMS Tools load, macro and source libraries. If in a library a member contains versions 15000301 and 15000601, for example, only version 15000601 remains after the accept.

You need to execute this step before you start receive processing. You can skip this step if your previous install was a CA-IDMS Tools base install.

6.8.5 Step 5. Adapt the Base IJMP Procedure File

The passwords for this maintenance install differ from those on previous tapes (see Authorization Sheets). Adapt the passwords in the base IJMP procedure file. You use this file in the P-MAINT procedure (step 6) to determine items like parameters, CA-products and passwords that you install at your site.

6.8.6 Step 6. Execute Procedure P-MAINT

After you offload all of the files form the maintenance tape to disk, use this JCL to start the maintenance installation process:

execute P-MAINT procedure (BS2000)

/CALL-PROC (LIB=**mntpref**.BOOTLIB,ELEM=P-MAINT)

mntpref = maintenance prefix

When calling P-MAINT, the maintenance process executes INIT as the first FUNCTION. If you already completed the INIT function in step 4 (accepting the previous maintenance), you do not need to repeat the step.

When executing, the INIT function prompts you for this list of parameters:

Parameters	Descriptions
&STEDTNAM	The start name of the Editor program (START-EDT for example).

Parameters	Descriptions
&IJMPARMF	<p>Name of the base IJMP procedure file containing all CAIJMP input parameters. This file was used to install the CA-IDMS Tools Release 15.0 and above product line. You now use the file to determine which of those products were installed at your site. This file also obtains the names of your execution libraries (INDLOADDSN LOADLIB for example), your BS2000 utilities (STLMSNAM START-LMS for example) and your passwords.</p>
	<p>Prior to running the INIT function, make sure the passwords in the IJMP file change with the new passwords for this maintenance install.</p>
	<p>The last item the IJMP file finds is BSJCARD5. This has a default value of RESOURCES=PAR(CPU-LIMIT=NO) and P-MAINT stores this value in its &ENTPARM parameter. The value contains the /ENTER-JOB parameters used for the batch processing.</p>
	<p>Note: &IJMPARMF should be a sequential disk file.</p>
&MNTPREF	<p>This is the maintenance prefix and you should use the same one as you did in "Step 3. Offload all files from tape".</p>
&BASPREF	<p>Prefix used during the base installation of the CA-IDMS Release 15.0 and above.</p>
&SYSTEM	<p>A dbname which contains the segment SYSTEM. The default value is SYSTEM.</p>
&APPLDICT	<p>A dbname which contains the segment APPLDICT. Usually, it is named APPLDICT.</p>
&SYSDIRL	<p>A dbname which contains the segment SYSDIRL. Usually, it is named SYSDIRL.</p>

Parameters	Descriptions
&ASFICT	A dbname which contains the segment ASFICT. The default value is ASFICT.

After execution of the INIT function, you can proceed with the maintenance installation process. You can install by using the interactive (**&PROCEED=I**) method or by using the batch (**&PROCEED=B**) method.

Interactive Processing: If you use interactive processing, then the P-MAINT procedure calls itself again and prompts you for the next FUNCTION. P-MAINT repeats this self-calling process after the termination of each FUNCTION until you enter **STOP**.

When you select the APPLY or RECEIVE functions, P-MAINT prompts you for an operation mode to perform the dictionary maintenance. You can use either **CENTRAL** or **LOCAL**.

Use the following sequence of functions:

1. **INIT** function
2. **RECEIVE** function
3. **APPLY** function
4. **STOP** function

Please note that P-MAINT prompts you several times in EDT mode. You need to press K1 to proceed.

Batch Processing: If you use batch processing, a list of FUNCTIONS displays. You can then select any number of FUNCTIONS to execute in the batch. The FUNCTIONS execute in the same sequence as they appear in the list. When you press ENTER/HALT or K1, you create an ENTER-file with all the selected FUNCTION-calls. After creating the ENTER-file, you then receive a prompt to submit the batch. Answering YES submits the ENTER-file with the same /ENTER-parameters as specified in the P-MAINT parameter: **&ENTPARM**.

The name of this ENTER-file is: **&MNTPREF.ENTER.BATCHMAINT**

If you select the APPLY function as part of the batch, the default operation mode for the dictionary maintenance is LOCAL.

Recalling P-MAINT: Recalling P-MAINT for batch processing is only valid after execution of the INIT function. During INIT processing the P-MAINT procedure saves the value of the parameter &PROCEED. Depending on the value of &PROCEED, the following applies when recalling P-MAINT:

- **&PROCEED=I** – Interactive processing of the P-MAINT procedure with the prompting as described above.
- **&PROCEED=B** – The P-MAINT procedure prompts you for a FUNCTION to execute and creates an ENTER-file with the specified FUNCTION-call. Again, you submit the ENTER-file in the batch with the same /ENTER-parameters as specified in the parameter &ENTPARM. After you do this the P-MAINT procedure stops.

The name of the ENTER-file is: **&MNTPREF.ENTER.&FUNCTION**.

If you select the APPLY function, the default operation mode for the dictionary maintenance is LOCAL.

EDT Interface: You use the EDT interface when running the CA-IDMS utilities for this maintenance process. The maintenance process uses it in the procedures 'P-BCF' and 'P-DDDL'. If you run the P-MAINT procedure in interactive processing (if **PROCEED** parameter equals 'I') then it prompts you in EDT mode for these procedures.

You can make additional updates by modifying or inserting lines into work file \$0. Normally all necessary updates for this maintenance step already exist in this workfile \$0.

Press Enter and then K1 to proceed to the Update.

Press K2 to Exit (to stop). The P-MAINT procedure stops. Please note that you need to redo this step. You do this by adapting the P-MAINT procedure on a temporary file. First you redo the step that you stopped and then you restart this temporary file to continue.

After pressing K1 the EDT mode prompts you again to see the results of the update in workfile \$1 (workfile \$0 is deleted). If you did the update correctly, then you can continue by pressing K1. The EDT interface then terminates (because workfile \$0 is empty) and the maintenance procedure continues.

If you updated incorrectly, then you need to try the update again. You can redo it by recreating workfile \$0 with the additional or adapted requirements. Once you successfully made the updates, press K1. This process continues until you update successfully.

Remember that all your updates on workfile \$0 accumulate into workfile \$5 and all the results from workfile \$1 accumulate into workfile \$6.

If you run P-MAINT procedure in batch processing (if **PROCEED** parameter equals 'B'), then EDT mode does not prompt you and no additional updates are possible.

6.9 Remarks for CA-IDMS Tools

6.9.1 P-MAINT Maintenance Procedure

Release link names **SYSIPT**, **SYSLST** and **SYSOPT** before running the P-MAINT procedure. You need to release the names because the IDMS utilities use these files.

The new P-MAINT procedure gives you the possibility of many additional maintenance updates. Analogue updates are available for both CA-IDMS and CA-IDMS Tools maintenance updates. You can not, however, use the CA-IDMS Tools P-MAINT procedure for a CA-IDMS maintenance install. You also can not use the CA-IDMS P-MAINT procedure for the CA-IDMS Tools maintenance install.

Although you can use different maintenance updates, you do not need to implement all of them (see member S-volume in the BOOT Library). You can skip some of the updates (see messages of the P-MAINT procedure).

6.9.2 Special members

You can find the samples RHDCUXIT (named TOOLXIT1, TOOLXIT2...TOOLXIT7) and the UXIT link members (named TOOLLNK1, TOOLLNK2...TOOLLNK7) in your **dbmssrc** library. You can also find the TOOLSECR member in your **dbmssrc** library.

You can now use the COBOL source USDBCLST and its sample compile procedure DOUSDCMP. You can also now use COBOL sources USLBILX and USLRPT5 and the sample compile procedure DOLOGCMP.

All source members are stored as type S but all procedures and Job streams are stored as type J in the PLAM libraries.

6.9 Remarks for CA-IDMS Tools

Appendix A. CA-IDMS Product List

A.1 Overview	A-3
A.2 CA-IDMS Product List	A-4

A.1 Overview

The CA-IDMS product list consists of multiple integrated products which are installed together to create the CA-IDMS system environment. This Appendix lists the products which you may install with the integrated installation procedure described in this manual.

The product mix contained on the installation tape may vary from one tape to the next. For the exact list of products contained on a particular genlevel tape, refer to the CAIIJMP member in the boot library.

Product passwords are required for the installation of most products. The correct product passwords for your CA-IDMS product mix are included in your installation package.

A.2 CA-IDMS Product List

Base Products	Password Required
CA-IDMS/DB	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB-SQL Option	Yes
CA-IDMS/DBCS Option	No
CA-IDMS/DC	Yes
CA-IDMS/UCF	Yes
CA-IDMS/DDS	Yes
CA-IDMS/Server	Yes

Base Products	Password Required
CA-ADS	Yes
ASF-OPTION of CA-ADS	Yes
CA-ADS/BATCH	Yes
CA-ADS/GENERATOR	Yes
CA-ADS/APPC	Yes
CA-IDMS/CULPRIT	Yes
CA-DB:ARCHITECT	Yes
CA-ICMS	Yes
CA-IDMS/PERFMON	Yes
CA-IDMS/PRESSPACK	Yes
CA-OLQ	Yes
CA-VTX/PRESTEL	Yes
CA-VTX/TELETEL	Yes

Tools Products on Tools Tape	Password Required
CA-IDMS/ADS ALIVE	Yes
CA-IDMS/ADS TRACE	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB ANALYZER	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB AUDIT	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB EXTRACTOR	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB REORG	Yes
CA-IDMS/DC SORT	Yes
CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY LOADER	Yes
CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR	Yes
CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MODULE EDITOR	Yes
CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY QUERY FACILITY	Yes
CA-IDMS/DML ONLINE	Yes
CA-IDMS/ENFORCER	Yes
CA-IDMS/JOURNAL ANALYZER	Yes
CA-IDMS/LOG ANALYZER	Yes
CA-IDMS/MASTERKEY	Yes
CA-IDMS/ONLINE LOG DISPLAY	Yes
CA-IDMS/PERFMON	Yes
CA-IDMS/PRESSPACK	Yes
CA-IDMS/SASO	Yes
CA-IDMS/SCHEMA MAPPER	Yes
CA-IDMS/TASK ANALYZER	Yes

Transparency Products	Password Required
CA-IDMS/BS2KSERV Transparency	Yes
CA-IDMS/DL1 Transparency	Yes

Appendix B. CA-IDMS Tools Product List

B.1 Overview	B-3
B.2 Product List	B-4

B.1 Overview

The CA-IDMS Tools product list consists of multiple integrated products which installed together create the CA-IDMS Tools system environment. This appendix lists the products which you may install with the integrated installation procedure described in this manual.

The product mix contained on the installation tape may vary from one tape to the next. For the exact list of products contained on a particular genlevel tape, refer to the CAIIJMP member in the boot library.

Product passwords are required for the installation of most products. The correct product passwords for your CA-IDMS Tools product mix are included in your installation package (see Product Authorization sheets).

B.2 Product List

Product	Password Required
CA-IDMS/ADS Alive	Yes
CA-IDMS/ADS Trace	Yes
CA-IDMS/Database Extractor	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB Analyzer	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB Audit	Yes
CA-IDMS/DB Reorg	Yes
CA-IDMS/DC Sort	Yes
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator	Yes
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Assistant	No
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor	Yes
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Query Facility	Yes
CA-IDMS/DML Online	Yes
CA-IDMS/Enforcer	Yes
CA-IDMS/Journal Analyzer	Yes
CA-IDMS/Log Analyzer	Yes
CA-IDMS/Masterkey	Yes
CA-IDMS/Online Log Display	Yes
CA-IDMS/SASO	Yes
CA-IDMS/Schema Mapper	Yes
CA-IDMS/Task Analyzer	Yes
CA-IDMS/General Compare	No
CA-IDMS/General DBIO	No
CA-IDMS/General Editor	No
CA-IDMS/General IDMS	No
CA-IDMS/General Mapper	No
CA-IDMS/General Pascal	No
CA-IDMS/General Service	No
CA-IDMS/General Sort	No

Appendix C. CA-IDMS CAIIJMP Parameter List

C.1 CA-IDMS CAIIJMP Parameter List	C-3
--	-----

C.1 CA-IDMS CAIIJMP Parameter List

CAIIJMP Parameter List

```
$$COMMENT ===== Member IJCLPARM =====
$$COMMENT 1234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012
TAPEVOL1   " "      TAPE VOLUME 1 FOR TWO VOLUME INSTALLATIONS
TAPEVOL2   " "      TAPE VOLUME 2 FOR TWO VOLUME INSTALLATIONS
```

```
*****
****          CA-IDMS/DB RELEASE 15.0
*****
*
*      THIS TAPE CONTAINS CA-IDMS/DB AND RELATED PRODUCTS.
*      THIS TAPE CAN BE INSTALLED ONLY IN A BS2000 ENVIRONMENT.
*
*
*
*****
*****
```

```
*****
*          PRODUCT PARAMETERS
*
*      SPECIFY THE PRODUCTS TO BE INSTALLED BY
*      CODING THE APPROPRIATE PARAMETER(S) AS
*      INPUT TO IJMP WITH A VALUE OF - INSTALL
*****
*****
```

ASF-OPTION	NO	PRODUCT: ASF-OPTION OF CA-ADS FE2
CA-ADS	NO	PRODUCT: APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM: ONLINE FE
CA-ADS/APPC	NO	PRODUCT: ADS COOPERATIVE PROCESSING OPTION FM
CA-ADS/BATCH	NO	PRODUCT: APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM: BATCH FF
CA-EDP/AUDITOR	NO	PRODUCT: EDP AUDITOR & REPORTING TOOL FL
CA-ICMS	NO	PRODUCT: INFORMATION ACCESS TOOL FH

C.1 CA-IDMS CAIJMP Parameter List

CA-IDMS/BS2KSERV	NO	PRODUCT: BS2000 SERVICES FOR IDMS ZQ
CA-IDMS/CULPRIT	NO	PRODUCT: REPORT WRITER FOR CA-IDMS/DB FK
CA-IDMS/DB	NO	PRODUCT: DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GJ
CA-IDMS/DB-SQL	NO	PRODUCT: SQL SUPPORT FOR CA-IDMS/DB GT
CA-IDMS/DBCS	NO	PRODUCT: DBCS OPTION FOR CA-IDMS/DB EJ
CA-IDMS/DBOMP/T	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DBOMP TRANSPARENCY ZE
CA-IDMS/DC	NO	PRODUCT: TELEPROCESSING MONITOR GQ
CA-IDMS/DDS	NO	PRODUCT: DISTRIBUTED DATABASE SYSTEM GS
CA-IDMS/DL1/T	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DL1 TRANSPARENCY GU
CA-IDMS/PERFMON	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS PERFORMANCE MONITOR GY
CA-IDMS/SERVER	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/SERVER XS
CA-IDMS/UCF	NO	PRODUCT: TP COMMUNICATION FACILITY GP
CA-OLQ	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB QUERY TOOL FG
CA-PRESSPACK	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB DISK COMPRESSION GX
CA-VTX/PRESTEL	NO	PRODUCT: CA-VIDEOTEXT PRESTEL ZF
CA-VTX/TELETEL	NO	PRODUCT: CA-VIDEOTEXT TELETEL ZG

```
*****
*          **** PASSWORD PARAMETERS ****
*
*      CODE PASSWORD PARAMETERS WITH PASSWORD      *
*      VALUES REQUIRED FOR YOUR PRODUCT MIX.      *
*
*****
PW1      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW2      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW3      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW4      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW5      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW6      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW7      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW8      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW9      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW10     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW11     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW12     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW13     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW14     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW15     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW16     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW17     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW18     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW19     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW20     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW21     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW22     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW23     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW24     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW25     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW26     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW27     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW28     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW29     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW30     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW31     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW32     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW33     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW34     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW35     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW36     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW37     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW38     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
PW39     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
```

```
*****
*          PRODUCT COMPONENTS
*
*      COMPONENTS ARE SET BY PRODUCT SELECTION
*      AND SHOULD NOT BE CODED AS INPUT TO IJMP
*
*****
```

EJ	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DBCS MODULES
EJ2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	IBM AND DBCS JAPAN
FE	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS MODULES
FE1	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS UPPER CASE MODULES
FE2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	ASF-OPTION MODULES
FE5	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS MIXED CASE ADS
FE6	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS UPPER CASE ADS
FE8	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS MIXED CASE ASF
FE9	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS UPPER CASE ASF
FF	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS/BATCH MODULES
FG	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-OLQ MODULES
FG1	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-OLQ UPPER CASE MODULES
FG2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-OLQ UPPER CASE MODULES
FH	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ICMS MODULES
FH1	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ICMS UPPER CASE MODULES
FH2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ICMS UPPER CASE MODULES
FK	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT MODULES
FK1	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT
FK2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT
FK3	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT
FK4	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT
FK5	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT
FK6	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT
FK7	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/CULPRIT
FK8	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CULPRIT IDD SECURITY OFF
FK9	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CULPRIT IDD SECURITY ON
FL	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-EDP/AUDITOR MODULES
FM	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-ADS/APPC MODULES
GJ	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB MODULES
GJ1	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB UPPERCASE MODULES
GJ2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB UPPERCASE MODULES
GJ3	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB CUSTOMIZED SOURCE MODULES
GJ4	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB IDMSSPSQ
GJ5	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS SVC MODULE
GJ6	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DDR
GJ7	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/VTX COMMON MODULES
GJ8	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/MIXED CASE
GJ9	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/UPPER CASE
GJ10	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB
GJ11	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB
GJ12	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB
GJ13	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DB
GJ24	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/RHDCUXIT
GP	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/UCF MODULES

GP2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/UCF TP/TSO
GQ	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DC MODULES
GS	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DDS MODULES
GT	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/SQL MODULES
GU	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DL1 TRANSPARENCY MODULES
GU2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/DL1 TRANSPARENCY SOURCE
GX	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/PRESSPACK MODULES
GY	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/PERFMON MODULES
GY1	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/PERFMON UPPER CASE
GY2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/PERFMON CUSTOMIZED SOURCE MODULES
XS	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/SERVER
ZF	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-VIDEOTEXT PRETEL
ZG	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-VIDEOTEXT TELETEL
ZQ	DEFAULT	COMPONENT	CA-IDMS/BS2KSERV

* There are two ways this tape can be installed.
* You can install a completely new 15.0 system,
* keeping nothing from your 12.0 system, or you
* can install only the 15.0 software, retaining
* your 12.0 dictionaries. The latter is called
* an upgrade.
*
* If converting from a CA-IDMS release prior to
* 12.0, you may NOT do an upgrade.

GJUPGRAD	NO	Specify 'YES' to do an upgrade
*		Specify 'NO' to do a complete install

* **** OPERATING SYSTEM & SITE SPECIFIC ****
* PARAMETERS
*
* USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE
* YOUR ENVIRONMENT TO CAIJMP (SUCH AS
* OPERATING SYSTEM DATASET NAMES, DEVICE
* TYPES, UTILITY NAMES, ETC.).

OPSYS	BS2K	OPERATING SYSTEM BS2000 V9.0 AND UP
OPSYSREL	" "	RELEASE LEVEL (AE, EX OR BLANK) FOR MSP/SP
BSJCARD1	"REMARK LOGON JCL 1"	LOGON JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD2	"REMARK LOGON JCL 2"	LOGON JCL-CARD 2
BSJCARD3	"REMARK LOGON JCL 3"	LOGON JCL-CARD 3
BSJCARD4	"REMARK LOGON JCL 4"	LOGON JCL-CARD 4
BSJCARD5	"RESOURCES=PAR(CPU-LIMIT=NO)"	ENTER JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD6	"REMARK ENTER-JOB JCL 2"	ENTER JCL-CARD 2
STCOBNAM	START-COBOL85-COMPILER START OF COBOL COMPILER	

BSCOBLIB	\$TASKLIB	NAME OF COBOL RUNTIME LIBRARY
* BSCOMOP1	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 1
* BSCOMOP2	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 2
* BSCOMOP3	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 3
* BSCOMOP4	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 4
* BSCOMOP5	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 5
* BSCOMOP6	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 6
* BSCOMOP7	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 7
* BSCOMOP8	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 8
* BSCOMOP9	""	COMOPT PARAMETER 9
STASMNAM	START-ASSEMBH	START OF ASSEMBLER COMPILER
* BSASMPRM	LIST=YES,ALTLIB=YES,XREF=YES,SYMDIC=NO	ASSEMBLER PARAMS
* BSASMSDF	NO (YES/NO)	SDF INTERFACE FOR ASSEMBLER H
BSASMSML	\$MACROLIB	NAME OF SYSTEM MACROLIB (SYSLIB)
DCAM-MACLIB	@BSASMSML@	NAME OF DCAM MACROLIB
TIAM-MACLIB	@BSASMSML@	NAME OF TIAM MACROLIB
VTSU-MACLIB	@BSASMSML@	NAME OF VTSU MACROLIB
STLNKNAM	START-BINDER	START OF LINKAGE EDITOR
BSSRTNAM	\$SORT	START OF SORT
BSSRTLIB	\$SORTLIB	NAME OF SORT RUNTIME LIBRARY
STEDTNAM	START-EDT	START OF EDITOR
STLMSNAM	START-LMS	START OF LIBRARY MAINTENANCE SYSTEM
* BSLMSLIB	\$LMSLIB	NAME OF LMS RUNTIME LIBRARY
TAPEUNIT	T-C4	UNIT TYPE FOR INSTALLATION TAPE
DISKUNIT	""	DEFAULT UNIT TYPE FOR ALL DISK DATASETS
DISKVOL	""	DEFAULT VOLSER FOR ALL DISK DATASETS
DISKACCM	UPAM	DISK FILE ACCESS METHOD
WORKUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT TYPE FOR WORKFILES
WORKVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR WORKFILES
WORKXTNT	2001,600	SPACE FOR ALL TEMPORARY WORK DATASETS
PDETYPE	DYNAMIC	(DYNAMIC/STATIC) DYNAMIC WILL ALLOW THE THE CENTRAL VERSION TO USE NULL PDE(S)

```
*****
*          NEW STORPROT PARAMETER
*
*          THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DETERMINES IF YOU WANT
*          PROTECT OR NOPROTECT ON YOUR PROGRAM STATEMENTS.
*
*          STORPROT YES MEANS THAT THE PROGRAM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES PROTECT AND THE SYSTEM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES NOPROTECT.
*
*          STORPROT NO MEANS THAT THE PROGRAM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES NOPROTECT AND THE SYSTEM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES PROTECT.
*****
```

STORPROT "YES"

```

*****
*                                *
****      BS2000 JCL SYNTAX PROCESSING      ****
*                                *
*      ISP DEFAULT COMMANDS USED IN THE PRODUCED   *
*      INSTALLATION JCL-STREAM.                      *
*      DON'T CHANGES THESE VALUES.                  *
*                                *
*****
```

CMDCALL	CALL-PROC
CMDEXEC	START-PROG
CMDSTEP	SET-JOB-STEP
* CMDFILE	FILE
CMDCFILE	CRE-FILE
CMDIFILE	IMPORT-FILE
CMDMFAT	MOD-FILE-ATTR
CMDSFILI	ADD-FILE-LINK
* CMDSYSF	SYSFILE
CMDASDTA	ASS-SYSDTA
CMDASLST	ASS-SYSLST
CMDASOUT	ASS-SYSOUT
CMDASOPT	ASS-SYSOPT
CMDASIPT	ASS-SYSIPT
* CMDDROP	DROP
CMDHOLD	HOLD-PROG
CMDRESU	RESU-PROG
CMDSTSW	MOD-JOB-SW
CMDLOGN	SET-LOGON-PAR
CMDLOGF	EXIT-JOB
CMDRMRK	REMARK
CMDENTR	ENT-JOB
CMDRLSE	REM-FILE-LINK
CMDERAS	DEL-FILE
* CMDPARM	PARAM
CMDSKIP	SKIP-COM
CMDPROC	BEG-PROC
CMDENDP	EXIT-PROC

```

*****
*                                *
****      FOR AN ADDON INSTALL      ****
*                                *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS IF CA-IDMS/DB   *
*      HAS ALREADY BEEN INSTALLED AND YOU ARE        *
*      NOW INSTALLING ANOTHER PRODUCT ON TOP OF      *
*      IT.                                         *
*                                *
*****
```

NUMJRNS	4	HOW MANY DISK JOURNALS HAVE BEEN DEFINED
NEWDMCL	""	NAME FOR THE NEW GLOBAL DMCL MODULE WHICH WILL BE CREATED. SPECIFY A NEW NAME SO THAT YOUR CURRENT

C.1 CA-IDMS CAIJMP Parameter List

PRODUCTION GLOBAL DMCL WILL NOT BE DESTROYED.

```
*****
*          PRODUCT SPECIFIC PARAMTERS      ****
*
*    THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS CAN BE USED TO      *
*    CUSTOMIZE ANY PRODUCT SPECIFIC ASSEMBLER      *
*    STEPS THAT TAKE PLACE DURING THE INSTALL.     *
*
*****
```

```
*****
*          SELECT GENERAL IDMS-DB PARAMETERS      ***
*
*****
```

OPTICENT	YES	IDMSOPTI PARM
GLBLDMCL	R150DMCL	NAME OF YOUR GLOBAL DMCL LOAD MODULE
FREESTG	64	FREESTG VALUE FOR ASSEMBLY OF #DCPARM
DC-SYSTEM	120	DC SYSTEM NUMBER FOR ASSEMBLY OF #DCPARM
DBCS-MODE	IBM	WHAT IS THE DBCS HARDWARE ENVIRONMENT? (IBM/FACOM)
CASE-MODE	UPLOW	TERMINALS SUPPORT UPPER OR MIXED CASE? (UPLOW/UPPER)
AD-OPTION	NEITHER	FOR CA-AD INSTALL
BSERXLEN	36	BS2000 ERE EXTENSION LENGTH
BSREGION	8000	STARTUP REGION SIZE
BSXMPOLL	2	X-MEMORY POOL IN SEGMENTS
BSPRTLOG	YES	AUTOMATIC PRINT LOGFILES (YES/NO)
BSMODULE	IDMSDCB	STARTUP MODULE NAME
BSMAXTSN	1	NUMBER OF TASKS
BSMESSID	IDMS000	CONSOLE MESSAGE-ID
AD-OPTION	NEITHER	FOR CA-AD INSTALL

```
*****
*          SELECT PERFORMANCE MONITOR PARAMETERS  ***
*
*****
```

PMAMACT	YES	ACTIVATE APPLICATION MONITOR: NO/YES
PMAMDLOG	YES	WRITE APPLICATION MONITOR STATS TO DDLCLOG
PMIMACT	YES	ACTIVATE INTERVAL MONITOR: NO/YES
PMIMDCLOG	YES	WRITE INTERVAL MONITOR STATS TO DDLCLOG
PMDCSTAT	YES	WRITE DCSTATS TO DDLCLOG: NO/YES
PMCOMPANY	"COMPUTER ASSOCIATES INTERNATIONAL, INC."	
*		COMPANY NAME TO APPEAR ON PERFMON REPORTS

```

*****
*          *
****      SELECT CULPRIT CUSTOMIZING VALUES      ***
*          *
*****


CULL-PAN    ""      DATASET NAME FOR PANVALET LINKEDIT
CULL-SECURE NO      INVOKE CULPRIT SECURITY FEATURES
CULL-PROF1  ""      SPECIFY PROFILE CSECT OPTIONS HERE
CULL-PROF2  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 2
CULL-PROF3  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 3
CULL-PROF4  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 4
CULL-PROF5  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 5
CULL-PROF6  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 6
CULL-PROF7  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 7
CULL-PROF8  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 8
CULL-PROF9  ""      CULPRIT 15.0 PROFILE CSECT OPTION 9
CULL-ROOT   ""      NUMBER OF BYTES TO BE RESERVED FOR DL/I CONTROL MODULES

*****


*          *
****      LIBRARY PARAMETERS FOLLOW      ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO CONTROL      *
*      THE ALLOCATION AND NAMING CONVENTION OF      *
*      LIBRARIES REQUIRED FOR CA-IDMS/DB.          *
*          *
*****


PREFIX     ""      PREFIX FOR ALL LIBRARIES
DBPREFIX   @PREFIX@  PREFIX FOR ALL DATABASE FILES
PREFBOOT   "FOGJ1B." PREFIX FOR BOOT LIBRARY
PREFJBLS   @PREFBOOT@ PREFIX FOR Job SYSLST and SYSOUT

*****


*          *
***      SELECT      *
*      INSTALLATION LIBRARY      ***
*          *
*****


* THE FOLLOWING LIBRARIES WILL CONTAIN SOURCES, MACROS *
* OBJECTS AND APARS OFFLOADED FROM THE INSTALLATION TAPE*
*****


INDAPADSN APARLIB DATASET NAME FOR "APARLIB"
INDAPAUNIT @DISKUNIT@  OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "APARLIB"
INDAPAVOL @DISKVOL@   OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "APARLIB"
INDAPAXTNT ""        DISK SPACE FOR "APARLIB"
INDAPABKSZ STD       BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "APARLIB"

```

```

INDSRCDSN SRCLIB DATASET NAME FOR "SRCLIB"
INDSRCUNIT @DISKUNIT@ OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SRCLIB"
INDSRCVOL @DISKVOL@ OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SRCLIB"
INDSRCXTNT ""
INDSRCBKSZ STD BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "SRCLIB"

INDMACDSN MACLIB DATASET NAME FOR "MACLIB"
INDMACUNIT @DISKUNIT@ OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "MACLIB"
INDMACVOL @DISKVOL@ OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "MACLIB"
INDMACXTNT ""
INDMACBKSZ STD BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "MACLIB"

INDLOADDSN LOADLIB DATASET NAME FOR "LOADLIB"
INDLOADUNIT @DISKUNIT@ OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "LOADLIB"
INDLOADVOL @DISKVOL@ OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "LOADLIB"
INDLOADXTNT ""
INDLOADBKSZ STD BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "LOADLIB"

*****
*          SELECT          *
*** "DBA" SRCLIB AND LOADLIB ***
*          PARAMETERS        *
*****
* THE DBA LOADLIB WILL CONTAIN THE DMCL, DATABASE *
* NAME TABLE, SCHEMA AND SUBSCHEMA LOAD MODULES. *
*****



DBASRCDSN DBA.SRCLIB DATASET NAME FOR "DBA.SRCLIB"
DBASRCUNIT @DISKUNIT@ OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "DBA.SRCLIB"
DBASRCVOL @DISKVOL@ OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "DBA.SRCLIB"
DBASRCXTNT ""
DBASRCBKSZ STD BLOCKSIZE FOR "DBA.SRCLIB"

DBALOADDSSN DBA.LOADLIB DATASET NAME FOR "DBA.LOADLIB"
DBALOADUNIT @DISKUNIT@ OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "DBA.LOADLIB"
DBALOADVOL @DISKVOL@ OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "DBA.LOADLIB"
DBALOADXTNT ""
DBALOADBKSZ STD BLOCKSIZE FOR "DBA.LOADLIB"

*****
*          TEMPORARY WORK DATASET PARAMETERS      *
*          USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE  *
*          TEMPORARY WORK DATASETS.                 *
*****
*****



WRK1DSN WRK1WORK DATASET NAME FOR "WRK1WORK"
WRK1UNIT @WORKUNIT@ OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK1WORK"
WRK1VOL @WORKVOL@ OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK1WORK"
WRK1XTNT "" WORK SPACE FOR "WRK1WORK"

```

WRK2DSN	WRK2WORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRK2WORK"
WRK2UNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK2WORK"
WRK2VOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK2WORK"
WRK2XTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRK2WORK"
WRK3DSN	WRK3WORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRK3WORK"
WRK3UNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK3WORK"
WRK3VOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK3WORK"
WRK3XTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRK3WORK"
WRK4DSN	WRK4WORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRK4WORK"
WRK4UNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK4WORK"
WRK4VOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK4WORK"
WRK4XTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRK4WORK"
WRKADSN	WRKAWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKAWORK"
WRKAUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKAWORK"
WRKAVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKAWORK"
WRKAXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKAWORK"
WRKBDSN	WRKBWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKBWORK"
WRKBUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKBWORK"
WRKBVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKBWORK"
WRKBTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKBWORK"
WRKCDSN	WRKCWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKCUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKCVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKCXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKDDSN	WRKDWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKDUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKDVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKDXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKEDSN	WRKEWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKEUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKEVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKEXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKFDSN	WRKFWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKFUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKFVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKFXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKGDSN	WRKGWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKGWORK"
WRKGUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKGWORK"
WRKGVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKGWORK"
WRKGXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKGWORK"

```
* ****
*          PAGE RANGE CHART
*
*      * USE THIS CHART AS AN AID IF YOU NEED TO *
*      * INCREASE THE NUMBER OF PAGES FOR ANY    *
*      * AREA. IT IS YOUR RESPONSIBILITY TO     *
*      * MAKE ALL THE CHANGES NECESSARY TO       *
*      * ENSURE THAT PAGE RANGES DO NOT OVERLAP. *
*      *
*-----*
*      * FILE      | LOPAGE | HIPAGE | PAGES  *
*-----*
*      * DCCAT      |      1 |   300  |   300  *
*      * DCCATX     |   801  |   900  |   100  *
*      * DCCATL     |   901  |   950  |    50  *
*      * DCDML      | 1,001  | 2,000  | 1,000  *
*      * DCLOD      | 3,001  | 3,100  |   100  *
*      * DIRLLOD    | 4,001  | 4,010  |    10  *
*      * DIRL       | 5,001  | 7,000  | 2,000  *
*      * DCMMSG     | 10,001 | 14,000 | 4,000  *
*      * SQL        | 20,001 | 22,000 | 2,000  *
*      * SQLL       | 25,001 | 25,500 |   500  *
*      * SQLX       | 28,001 | 28,500 |   500  *
*      * DCLOG      | 30,001 | 34,000 | 4,000  *
*      * DCRUN      | 40,001 | 41,000 | 1,000  *
*      * SEC        | 48,001 | 48,500 |   500  *
*      * DCSCR      | 50,001 | 52,000 | 2,000  *
*      * DCLSCR     | 55,001 | 57,000 | 2,000  *
*      * DICT       | 60,001 | 62,000 | 2,000  *
*      * DL0D       | 70,001 | 70,500 |   500  *
*      * EMP        | 75,001 | 75,050 |   50  *
*      * INS        | 75,101 | 75,125 |   25  *
*      * ORG        | 75,151 | 75,175 |   25  *
*      * EMPL       | 77,001 | 77,100 |   100  *
*      * INFO       | 77,201 | 77,250 |   50  *
*      * INDX       | 77,301 | 77,350 |   50  *
*      * PROJDEMO   | 77,401 | 77,450 |   50  *
*      * ADML       | 80,001 | 82,000 | 2,000  *
*      * ADEFN      | 83,001 | 84,000 | 1,000  *
*      * ADATA      | 85,001 | 87,000 | 2,000  *
*      * ADL0D      | 88,001 | 90,000 | 2,000  *
*      * DISK JOURNALS |        |        | 5,000  *
*-----*
```

```
*****
*          SYSTEM SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ****
*
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE   *
*      FILES AND AREAS THAT COMPRIZE THE SYSTEM    *
*      SEGMENT. THE FILES IN THE SYSTEM SEGMENT    *
*      DEFINE THE RUNTIME SYSTEM AS WELL AS THE    *
*      PHYSICAL DATABASE.                         *
*
*****
```

```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***      SYSTEM.DDLDML    ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*****
```

DCDMLDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDML	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDML"
DCDMLUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDML"
DCDMLVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDML"
DCDMLXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDML"
DCDMLASGN	DCDML	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCDML"
DCDMLDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCDML"
DCDMLPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCDML "
DCDMLPAGS	1000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCDML "
DCDMLLOPAGE	1001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSTEM.DDLDML AREA
AUTHUSER	" "	AUTHORIZED USER ID FOR DICTIONARY SIGNON
AUTHUSERPW	" "	AUTHORIZED USER PASSWORD FOR DICTIONARY SIGNON

```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***      SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD   ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*****
```

DCLODDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD"
DCLODUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD"
DCLODVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD"
DCLODXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD"
DCLODASGN	DCLOD	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCLOD"
DCLODDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCLOD"
DCLODPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCLOD"
DCLODPAGS	100	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCLOD"
DCLODLOPAGE	3001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD AREA

```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***   SYSTEM.DDLDCLOG    ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*****
```

DCLOGDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDCLOG	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOG"
DCLOGUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOG"
DCLOGVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOG"
DCLOGXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOG"
DCLOGASGN	DCLOG	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCLOG"
DCLOGDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCLOG"
DCLOGPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCLOG "
DCLOGPAGS	4000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCLOG "
DCLOGLOPAGE	30001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSTEM.DDLDCLOG AREA


```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***   SYSTEM.DDLDCRUN   ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*****
```

DCRUNDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDCRUN	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCRUN"
DCRUNUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCRUN"
DCRUNVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCRUN"
DCRUNXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCRUN"
DCRUNASGN	DCRUN	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCRUN"
DCRUNDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCRUN"
DCRUNPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCRUN "
DCRUNPAGS	1000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCRUN "
DCRUNLOPAGE	40001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSTEM.DDLDCRUN AREA


```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***   SYSTEM.DDLDCSCR   ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*****
```

DCSCRDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDCSCR	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCSCR"
DCSCRUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCSCR"
DCSCRVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCSCR"
DCSCRXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCSCR"
DCSCRASGN	DCSCR	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCSCR"
DCSCRDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCSCR"
DCSCRPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCSCR "
DCSCRPAGS	2000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCSCR "
DCSCRLOPAGE	50001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSTEM.DDLDCSCR AREA

```

*****
*          *
****   CATSYS SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:   ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE  *
*      FILES AND AREAS THAT COMPRIZE THE CATSYS    *
*      SEGMENT. THIS SEGMENT IS REQUIRED FOR A     *
*      CA-IDMS/DB INSTALL.                         *
*          *
*****


*****
*          *
***   SELECT          *
*   CATSYS.DCCAT      ***
*   PARAMETERS        *
*****


DCCATDSN   CATSYS.DCCAT    DATASET NAME FOR "CATSYS.DCCAT"
DCCATUNIT  @DISKUNIT@    OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "CATSYS.DCCAT"
DCCATVOL   @DISKVOL@     OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "CATSYS.DCCAT"
DCCATXTNT  ""           DISK SPACE FOR "CATSYS.DCCAT"
DCCATASGN  DCCAT        DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCCAT"
DCCATDEV   @DISKACCM@    FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCCAT"
DCCATPGSZ  4096         PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCCAT "
DCCATPAGS  300          NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCCAT "
DCCATLOPAGE 1            STARTING PAGE OF THE CATSYS.DCCAT AREA


*****
*          *
***   SELECT          *
*   CATSYS.DCCATLOD   ***
*   PARAMETERS        *
*****


DCCATLDSN  CATSYS.DCCATLOD DATASET NAME FOR "CATSYS.DCCATLOD"
DCCATLUNIT @DISKUNIT@   OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "CATSYS.DCCATLOD"
DCCATLVOL  @DISKVOL@    OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "CATSYS.DCCATLOD"
DCCATLXTNT ""           DISK SPACE FOR "CATSYS.DCCATLOD"
DCCATLASGN DCCATL       DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCCATL"
DCCATLDEV  @DISKACCM@   FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCCATL"
DCCATLPGSZ 4096         PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCCATL "
DCCATLPAGS 200          NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCCATL "
DCCATLLOPAGE 751         STARTING PAGE OF THE CATSYS.DCCATLOD AREA

```

```

*****
*          SELECT      *
***      CATSYS.DCCATX      ***
*          PARAMETERS     *
*****


DCCATXDSN      CATSYS.DCCATX      DATASET NAME FOR "CATSYS.DCCATX"
DCCATXUNIT@    @DISKUNIT@        OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "CATSYS.DCCATX"
DCCATXVOL@    @DISKVOL@        OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "CATSYS.DCCATX"
DCCATXTNT"      ""              DISK SPACE FOR "CATSYS.DCCATX"
DCCATXASGN    DCCATX          DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCCATX"
DCCATXDEV@    @DISKACCM@        FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCCATX"
DCCATXPGSZ    4096            PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCCATX "
DCCATXPAGS    100             NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCCATX "
DCCATXLOPAGE  601             STARTING PAGE OF THE CATSYS.DCCATX AREA

*****


*          *
****      SYSDIRL SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE   *
*      SYSDIRL.DDLDML AREA. THE SYSDIRL SEGMENT      *
*      CONTAINS THE 14.1 IDMSNTWK SCHEMA AS WELL    *
*      AS ALL CUPRIT REPORT SOURCE. THIS SEGMENT      *
*      IS REQUIRED FOR A CA-IDMS/DB INSTALL.         *
*          *
*****


*****
*          SELECT      *
***      SYSDIRL.DDLDML      ***
*          PARAMETERS     *
*****


DIRLDSN      SYSDIRL.DDLDML      DATASET NAME FOR "SYSDIRL.DDLDML"
DIRLUNIT@    @DISKUNIT@        OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSDIRL.DDLDML"
DIRLVOL@    @DISKVOL@        OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSDIRL.DDLDML"
DIRLXTNT"      ""              DISK SPACE FOR "SYSDIRL.DDLDML"
DIRLASGN    DIRLDB           DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DIRLDB"
DIRLDEV@    @DISKACCM@        FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DIRLDB"
DIRLPGSZ    4096            PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DIRLDB"
DIRLPAGS    2000            NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DIRLDB"
DIRLLOPAGE  5001             STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSDIRL.DDLDML AREA

```

```

*****
*          SELECT      *
***   SYSDIRL.DDLDCLOD    ***
*          PARAMETERS    *
*****


DIRLLODDSN   SYSDIRL.DDLDCLOD DATASET NAME FOR "SYSDIRL.DDLDCLOD"
DIRLLODUNIT  @DISKUNIT@   OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSDIRL.DDLDCLOD"
DIRLLODVOL   @DISKVOL@   OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSDIRL.DDLDCLOD"
DIRLLODXTNT  ""
DIRLLODASGN  DIRLLOD    DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DIRLLOD"
DIRLLODDEV   @DISKACCM@  FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DIRLLOD"
DIRLLODPGSZ  4096       PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DIRLLOD"
DIRLLODPAGS  10         NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DIRLLOD"
DIRLLODLOPAGE 4001      STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSDIRL.DDLDCLOD AREA

*****


*          *
***   SYSMSG SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:    ***
*          *
*          USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE      *
*          THE SYSMSG.DDLDCLMSG AREA. THE SYSMSG        *
*          SEGMENT WILL CONATIN ALL THE RELEASE        *
*          14.1 MESSAGES. THIS SEGMENT IS REQUIRED     *
*          FOR A CA-IDMS/DB INSTALL.                   *
*          *
*****


*****
*          SELECT      *
***   SYSMSG.DDLDCLMSG    ***
*          PARAMETERS    *
*****


DCMSGDSN    SYSMSG.DDLDCLMSG  DATASET NAME FOR "SYSMSG.DDLDCLMSG"
DCMSGUNIT   @DISKUNIT@   OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSMSG.DDLDCLMSG"
DCMSGVOL    @DISKVOL@   OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSMSG.DDLDCLMSG"
DCMSGXTNT   ""
DCMSGASGN   DCMSG      DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCMSG"
DCMSGDEV    @DISKACCM@  FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DCMSG"
DCMSGPGSZ   4096       PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCMSG "
DCMSGPAGS   4000       NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCMSG "
DCMSGLOPAGE 10001      STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSMSG.DDLDCLMSG AREA

```

```
*****
*          *
****      SYSLOC SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE      *
*      THE SYSLOC.DDLOCSCR AREA. THE SYSLOC      *
*      SEGMENT IS A LOCAL SCRATCH AREA. THIS      *
*      FILE IS A TEMPORARY DATASET FOR LOCAL      *
*      BATCH PROCESSING. IT IS DEFINED TO YOUR      *
*      DMCL BUT NOT ALLOCATED DURING THE      *
*      INSTALL.                                     *
*          *
*****
```

```
*****
*          *
*      SELECT      *
***      SYSLOC.DDLOCSCR      ***
*          *
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

DCLSCRASGN	DCLSCR	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCLSCR"
DCLSCRPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DCLSCR "
DCLSCRPGS	2000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DCLSCR "
DCLSCRLOPAGE	55001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSLOC.DDLOCSCR AREA

```
*****
*          *
****      APPLDICT SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE      *
*      THE FILES THAT COMPRIZE THE APPLDICT      *
*      SEGMENT. THIS SEGMENT IS THE APPLICATION      *
*      DICTIONARY WHERE SCHEMA, SUBSCHEMA, AND      *
*      APPLICATION DEFINITIONS ARE STORED.      *
*          *
*****
```

```
*****
*          *
*      SELECT      *
***      APPLDICT.DDLDML      ***
*          *
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

DICTDSN	APPLDICT.DDLDML	DATASET NAME FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDML"
DICTUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDML"
DICTVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDML"
DICTXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDML"
DICTASGN	DICTDB	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DICTDB"
DICTDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DICTDB"

DICTPGSZ 4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DICTDB"
DICTPAGS 2000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DICTDB"
DICTLOPAGE 60001	STARTING PAGE OF APPLDICT.DDLMLM AREA

```
*****
*      SELECT      *
***   APPLDICT.DDLDCLOD  ***
*      PARAMETERS   *
*****
```

DLODDSN APPLDICT.DDLDCLOD	DATASET NAME FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
DLODUNIT @DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
DLODVOL @DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
DLODXNT "	DISK SPACE FOR "APPLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
DLODASGN DLODDB	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DLODDB"
DLODDEV @DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "DLODDB"
DLODPGSZ 4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "DLODDB"
DLODPAGS 500	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "DLODDB"
DLODLOPAGE 70001	STARTING PAGE OF APPLDICT.DDLDCLOD AREA

```
*****
*      **** SYSUSER SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW: ****
*
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE
*      THE SYSUSER.DDLSEC AREA. THE SYSUSER
*      SEGMENT CAN CONTAIN ANY SITE SPECIFIC
*      USER DEFINITIONS.
*
*****
```

```
*****
*      SELECT      *
***   SYSUSER.DDLSEC  ***
*      PARAMETERS   *
*****
```

SECDSN SYSUSER.DDLSEC	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSUSER.DDLSEC"
SECUNIT @DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSUSER.DDLSEC"
SECVOL @DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSUSER.DDLSEC"
SECTXTNT "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSUSER.DDLSEC"
SECASGN SECDD	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "SECDD"
SECDEV @DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "SECDD"
SECPGSZ 4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "SECDD"
SECPAGS 500	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "SECDD"
SECLOPAGE 48001	STARTING PAGE OF SYSUSER.DDLSEC AREA

```
*****
*          *
****      SYSSQL SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE  *
*      FILES AND AREAS THAT COMprise THE SYSSQL      *
*      SEGMENT. THE FILES IN THE SYSSQL SEGMENT      *
*      ARE REQUIRED FOR SITES INSTALLING THE        *
*      SQL DATABASE, CA-IDMS/DB-SQL.                 *
*          *
*****
```

```
*****
*          *
***      SELECT      *
*          *
*      SYSSQL.DDLCAT      ***
*          *
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

SQLDSN	SYSSQL.DDLCAT	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCAT"
SQLUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCAT"
SQLVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCAT"
SQLXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCAT"
SQLASGN	SQLDD	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "SQL"
SQLDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "SQL"
SQLPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "SQL"
SQLPAGS	2000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "SQL"
SQLLOPAGE	20001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSSQL.DDLCAT AREA

```
*****
*          *
***      SELECT      *
*          *
*      SYSSQL.DDLCATL      ***
*          *
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

SQLLDNSN	SYSSQL.DDLCATL	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATL"
SQLLUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATL"
SQLLVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATL"
SQLLXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATL"
SQLLASGN	SQLLOD	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "SQLLOD"
SQLLDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "SQLLOD"
SQLLPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "SQLLOD"
SQLLPAGS	500	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "SQLLOD"
SQLLLOPAGE	25001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSSQL.DDLCATL AREA

```

*****
*          SELECT      *
***    SYSSQL.DDLCATX  ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*****


SQLXDSN  SYSSQL.DDLCATX  DATASET NAME FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATX"
SQLXUNIT @DISKUNIT@    OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATX"
SQLXVOL  @DISKVOL@     OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATX"
SQLXTNT   ""           DISK SPACE FOR "SYSSQL.DDLCATX"
SQLXASGN  SQLXDD       DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "SQLXDD"
SQLXDEV   @DISKACCM@   FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "SQLXDD"
SQLXPGSZ  4096         PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "SQLXDD"
SQLXPAGS  500          NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "SQLXDD"
SQLXLOPAGE 28001       STARTING PAGE OF THE SYSSQL.DDLCATX AREA

*****


*          ASFDICT SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      *
*          USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE  *
*          FILES AND AREAS THAT COMPRIZE THE ASFDICT   *
*          SEGMENT. THIS SEGMENT IS ONLY REQUIRED      *
*          FOR SITES INSTALLING THE ASF-OPTION.        *
*          *
*****


ASF-OPT-INIT  YES      THIS OPTION ALLOWS YOU TO BYPASS THE FORMAT
                      OF THE ASFDICT AND WILL NOT RUN ANY OF THE
                      DDDL STEPS.
                      VALUES : YES - ALLOCATE AND FORMAT A NEW ASF
                      DICTIONARY.
                      NO - USE AN EXISTING ASF DICTIONARY.
                      ONLY INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

*****


*          ASFDICT.DDLDML  *
***    ASFDICT.DDLDML  ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*****


ADM LDSN   ASFDICT.DDLDML  DATASET NAME FOR "ASFDICT.DDLDML"
ADM LUNIT  @DISKUNIT@    OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "ASFDICT.DDLDML"
ADM LVOL   @DISKVOL@     OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "ASFDICT.DDLDML"
ADM LXNTN  ""           DISK SPACE FOR "ASFDICT.DDLDML"
ADM LASGN  ASFDML       DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "ASFDML"
ADM LDEV   @DISKACCM@   FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ASFDML"
ADM LPGSZ  4096         PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "ASFDML"
ADM LPAGS  2000         NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "ASFDML"
ADM LOPAGE 80001       STARTING PAGE OF ASFDICT.DDLDML AREA

```

```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***     ASFDICTASFDEFN    ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*          (ASF DEFINITION AREA)  *
*****
```

ADEFNDSN	ASFDICTASFDEFN	DATASET NAME FOR "ASFDICTASFDEFN"
ADEFNUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "ASFDICTASFDEFN"
ADEFNVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "ASFDICTASFDEFN"
ADEFNXNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "ASFDICTASFDEFN"
ADEFNASGN	ASFDEFN	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "ASFDEFN"
ADEFNDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ASFDEFN"
ADEFNPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "ASFDEFN"
ADEFNPAGS	1000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "ASFDEFN"
ADEFNLOPAGE	83001	STARTING PAGE OF ASFDICTASFDEFN AREA


```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***     ASFDICTASFDATA    ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*          (ASF DATA AREA)  *
*****
```

ADATADSN	ASFDICTASFDATA	DATASET NAME FOR "ASFDICTASFDATA"
ADATAUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "ASFDICTASFDATA"
ADATAVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "ASFDICTASFDATA"
ADATAXNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "ASFDICTASFDATA"
ADATAASGN	ASFDATA	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "ASFDATA"
ADATADEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ASFDATA"
ADATAPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "ASFDATA"
ADATAPAGS	2000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "ASFDATA"
ADATALOPAGE	85001	STARTING PAGE OF ASF DATA AREA


```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***     ASFDICTASFLOD    ***
*          PARAMETERS   *
*          (ASF LOAD AREA)  *
*****
```

ADLODDSN	ASFDICTASFLOD	DATASET NAME FOR "ASFDICTASFLOD"
ADLODUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "ASFDICTASFLOD"
ADLODVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "ASFDICTASFLOD"
ADLODXNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "ASFDICTASFLOD"
ADLODASGN	ASFLOD	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "ASFLOD"
ADLODDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ASFLOD"
ADLODPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "ASFLOD"
ADLODPAGS	2000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "ASFLOD"
ADLODLOPAGE	88001	STARTING PAGE OF THE ASFDICTASFLOD AREA

```
*****
*          **** EMPDEMO SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW: ****
*
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE   *
*      FILES AND AREAS THAT COMprise THE EMPDEMO    *
*      SEGMENT. THIS SEGMENT IS REQUIRED TO BUILD    *
*      THE EMPLOYEE SKILLS NETWORK DEMO DATABASE.   *
*
*****
```

EMPDSN	EMPDEMO.EMPDEMO	"EMPDEMO" DATASET NAME
EMPUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "EMPDEMO"
EMPVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "EMPDEMO"
EMPXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "EMPDEMO" ALLOCATION
EMPASGN	EMPDEMO	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "EMPDEMO"
EMPDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "EMPDEMO"
EMPPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "EMPDEMO"
EMPPAGS	50	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "EMPDEMO"
EMPLOPAGE	75001	STARTING PAGE OF EMPDEMO AREA
INSDSN	EMPDEMO.INSDEMO	"INSDEMO" DATASET NAME
INSUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "INSDEMO"
INSVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "INSDEMO"
INSXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "INSDEMO" ALLOCATION
INSASGN	INSDEMO	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "INSDEMO"
INSDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "INSDEMO"
INSPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "INSDEMO"
INSPAGS	25	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "INSDEMO"
INSLOPAGE	75101	STARTING PAGE OF INSDEMO AREA
ORGDSN	EMPDEMO.ORGDEMO	"ORGDEMO" DATASET NAME
ORGUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "ORGDEMO"
ORGVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "ORGDEMO"
ORGXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "ORGDEMO" ALLOCATION
ORGASGN	ORGDEMO	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "ORGDEMO"
ORGDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ORGDEMO"
ORPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "ORGDEMO"
ORGPAGS	25	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "ORGDEMO"
ORGLOPAGE	75151	STARTING PAGE OF ORGDEMO AREA

```
*****
*          **** SQLDEM0 SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW: ****
*
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE    *
*      FILES AND AREAS THAT COMPRIZE THE SQLDEM0     *
*      SEGMENT. THIS SEGMENT IS REQUIRED TO BUILD    *
*      THE SQL VERSION OF THE EMPLOYEE SKILLS        *
*      DEMO DATABASE.                                *
*
*****
```

EMPLDSN	SQLDEM0.EMPLDEM0	"EMPLDEM0" DATASET NAME
EMPLUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "EMPLDEM0"
EMPLVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "EMPLDEM0"
EMPLXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "EMPLDEM0" ALLOCATION
EMPLASGN	EMPLDEM0	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "EMPLDEM0"
EMPLDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "EMPLDEM0"
EMPLPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "EMPLDEM0"
EMPLPAGS	100	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "EMPLDEM0"
EMPLLOPAGE	77001	STARTING PAGE OF THE SQLDEM0.EMPLDEM0 AR EA
INFODSN	SQLDEM0.INFODEM0	"INFODEM0" DATASET NAME
INFOUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "INSDEM0"
INFOVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "INSDEM0"
INFOXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "INSDEM0" ALLOCATION
INFOASGN	INFODEM0	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "INFODEM0"
INFODEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "INFODEM0"
INFOPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "INFODEM0"
INFOPAGS	50	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "INFODEM0"
INFOLOPAGE	77201	STARTING PAGE OF THE SQLDEM0.INFODEM0 AR EA
INDXDSN	SQLDEM0.INDXDEM0	"INDXDEM0" DATASET NAME
INDXUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "INDXDEM0"
INDXVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "INDXDEM0"
INDXXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "INDXDEM0" ALLOCATION
INDXASGN	INDXDEM0	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "INDXDEM0"
INDXDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "INDXDEM0"
INDXPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "INDXDEM0"
INDXPAGS	50	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "INDXDEM0"
INDXLOPAGE	77301	STARTING PAGE FOR SQLDEM0.INDXDEM0

```

*****
*          *
**** PROJSEG SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW: ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE   *
*      PROJSEG SEGMENT. THIS SEGMENT IS PART OF     *
*      THE SQL DEMO DATABASE.                      *
*          *
*****


PROJDSN    PROJSEG.PROJDEMO  "PROJDEMO" DATASET NAME
PROJUNIT   @DISKUNIT@        OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "PROJDEMO"
PROJVOL    @DISKVOL@         OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "PROJDEMO"
PROJXTNT   ""
PROJASGN   PROJDEMO         DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "PROJDEMO"
PROJDEV    @DISKACCM@       FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "PROJDEMO"
PROJPGSZ   4096             PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "PROJDEMO"
PROJPAGS   50                NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "PROJDEMO"
PROJLOPAGE 77401            STARTING PAGE FOR PROJSEG.PROJDEMO


*****
*          *
**** DISK AND TAPE JOURNAL PARAMETERS ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE   *
*      SYSTEM TAPE AND DISK JOURNALS.               *
*          *
*****


*****          *
*      SELECT          *
*** TAPE JOURNAL FILE ***          *
*      PARAMETERS          *
*****


TJRNDSN   IDMSTAPE.DEMOJRLN  "TAPEJRLN" DATASET NAME
TDMPDSN   IDMSTAPE.DUMP     "TAPEDUMP" DATASET NAME (FILE 2)
TJRNVOL   '*DISK'           VOLSER FOR "TAPEJRLN"
*          IF '*DISK' THEN DISK WILL BE USED
TJRNUINT  @TAPEUNIT@       OVERRIDE TAPEUNIT FOR "TAPEJRLN"
TJRNASGN  SYSJRLN          DD NAME FOR "TAPEJRLN"
TJRNBKSZ  8000              BLOCK SIZE OF JOURNAL TAPE

```

```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***   DISK JOURNAL FILE  ***
*          PARAMETERS    *
*****
```

J1DSN	J1JRNL	DATASET NAME FOR "J1JRNL"
J1UNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "J1JRNL"
J1VOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "J1JRNL"
J1XTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "J1JRNL"
J1ASGN	J1JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J1JRNL"
J1DEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "J1JRNL"
J1PGSZ	2048	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "J1JRNL"
J1PAGS	5000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "J1JRNL"
 J2DSN	J2JRNL	DATASET NAME FOR "J2JRNL"
J2UNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "J2JRNL"
J2VOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "J2JRNL"
J2XTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "J2JRNL"
J2ASGN	J2JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J2JRNL"
J2DEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "J2JRNL"
J2PAGS	@J1PAGS@	NUMBER OF PAGES(BLOCKS) IN "J2JRNL"
 J3DSN	J3JRNL	DATASET NAME FOR "J3JRNL"
J3UNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "J3JRNL"
J3VOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "J3JRNL"
J3XTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "J3JRNL"
J3ASGN	J3JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J3JRNL"
J3DEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "J3JRNL"
J3PAGS	@J1PAGS@	NUMBER OF PAGES(BLOCKS) IN "J3JRNL"
 J4DSN	J4JRNL	DATASET NAME FOR "J4JRNL"
J4UNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "J4JRNL"
J4VOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "J4JRNL"
J4XTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "J4JRNL"
J4ASGN	J4JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J4JRNL"
J4DEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "J4JRNL"
J4PAGS	@J1PAGS@	NUMBER OF PAGES(BLOCKS) IN "J4JRNL"

```
*****
*          *
****      SYSCTL FILE ALLOCATION PARAMETERS      ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE      *
*      AND ALLOCATE A SYSCTL FILE.                  *
*          *
*****
```

SYSCTLDSN	SYSCTL	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSCTL"
SYSTLUUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "SYSCTL"
SYSTLVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "SYSCTL"
SYSTLXTNT	" "	DISK SPACE FOR "SYSCTL"
SYSTLASGN	SYSTL	DEFAULT DD NAME FOR "SYSCTL"
SYSTLBKSZ	STD	BLOCKSIZE FOR THE SYSCTL DATASET

```
*****
*          *
****      SELECT BACK-UP PARAMETERS      ****
*          *
* THE FOLLOWING VARIABLES CONTROL THE TAPE BACKUP*
* /RESTORE STEPS. THERE ARE THREE BACKUP/RESTORE *
* SECTIONS FOR THE INSTALL. THE FIRST IS FOR THE *
* SYSDIRL SEGMENT. THE SECOND IS FOR SYSTEM 99.   *
* THE THIRD IS A FINAL BACKUP OF THE INSTALLED    *
* DATABASE.                                     *
*          *
* IF 'BAKnACTION is 'NO' THE BACKUP AND RESTORE *
* WILL NOT BEEN DONE                           *
* IF 'BAKnACTION is 'BACKUP' ONLY THE BACKUP   *
* WILL BEEN DONE (NO RESTORE)                   *
* IF 'BAKnACTION is 'RESTORE' THE BACKUP AND   *
* RESTORE WILL BE DONE.                         *
*          *
* IF 'NO' IS SPECIFIED FOR THE BAKnVOL, NO    *
* BACKUP AND RESTORE WILL BEEN DONE.           *
*          *
* IF '*DISK' IS SPECIFIED FOR THE BAKnVOL, THE *
* BACKUP AND RESTORE WILL BE DONE ON DISK.       *
*          *
*****
```

```

BAK1ACTION BACKUP      RUN A "BACKUP" OF SYSDIRL AFTER DIRECTORY LOAD
BAK1DSN   IDMSTAPE.BAK1DIRL TAPE DATASET NAME FOR 1ST BACKUP
BAK1VOL   NO           VOLSER FOR "BAK1DICT"
BAK1UNIT  @TAPEUNIT@  OVERRIDE TAPEUNIT FOR "BAK1DICT"

```

```

BAK2ACTION BACKUP      RUN A "BACKUP" AFTER RHDCSGEN OF SYSTEM 99 (JOB6)
BAK2DSN   IDMSTAPE.BAK2DICT TAPE DATASET NAME FOR 2ND BACKUP
BAK2VOL   NO           VOLSER FOR "BAK2DICT"
BAK2UNIT  @TAPEUNIT@  OVERRIDE TAPEUNIT FOR "BAK2DICT"

```

```

BAK3ACTION BACKUP      RUN THE FINAL "BACKUP" (JOB10)
BAK3DSN   IDMSTAPE.BAK3DICT TAPE DATASET NAME FOR 3RD BACKUP
BAK3VOL   NO           VOLSER FOR "BAK3DICT"
BAK3UNIT  @TAPEUNIT@  OVERRIDE TAPEUNIT FOR "BAK3DICT"

```

```

*****
*                                     *
****          JOB AND RESTART PARAMETERS      ****
*                                     *
*     USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO SPECIFY    *
*     WHICH INSTALL JOBS YOU WILL BE RUNNING.    *
*     CODING "YES" OR A JOBNAME FOR ANY OF THE   *
*     "JOB" PARAMETERS WILL CAUSE JCL TO BE       *
*     GENERATED.                                *
*                                     *
*****
```

RESTART	""	RESTART GENERATED JOB WITH "JOBSTAGE"
JOB1	NO	JOB 1 DOES DATASET ALLOCATION
J1J0B1	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2J0B1	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JALLOC	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE ALLOCATES LIBRARIES AND DATABASE FILES
J1JALLOC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JALLOC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB2	NO	JOB 2 OFFLOADS MODULES INTO INDIRECT LIBRARIES
J1J0B2	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2J0B2	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JLNKIPDS	DEFAULT	THIS STEP LINKS CDMSIPDS AND CDMSIJMP FROM TAPE
J1JLNKIPDS	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JLNKIPDS	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JAPALIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP WILL OFFLOAD MODULES FROM TAPE TO INDLIB
J1JAPALIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JAPALIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

JOBJLIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP WILL OFFLOAD MODULES FROM TAPE TO INDLIB
J1JOBJLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOBJLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JSRCLIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP WILL OFFLOAD MODULES FROM TAPE TO INDLIB
J1JSRCLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JSRCLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB3	NO	JOB 3 WILL PROCESS CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLIES
J1JOB3	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB3	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMSYSI	DEFAULT	CREATE SYSIDMS FILE
J1ASMSYSI	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMSYSI	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMEDT	DEFAULT	DEFINE EDT ENVIRONMENT FOR THE EDT INTERFACE
J1ASMEDT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMEDT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMCTAB	DEFAULT	DEFINE DCMT SECURITY
J1ASMCTAB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMCTAB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMCULP	DEFAULT	DEFINE CULPRIT PROFILE
J1ASMCULP	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMCULP	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMDCDM	DEFAULT	CHANGE DC DEVICE CHARACTERISTICS AND OPTIONS
J1ASMDCDM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMDCDM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMDMLC	DEFAULT	CHANGE IDMSDMLC DEFAULTS
J1ASMDMLC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMDMLC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMPARM	DEFAULT	CREATE PARAMETERIZED STARTUP MODULES
J1ASMPARM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMPARM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMSVC	DEFAULT	CHANGE BS2000 ERE EXTENSION
J1ASMSVC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMSVC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMOPTI	DEFAULT	CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLY OF IDMSOPTI
J1ASMOPTI	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMOPTI	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMPERF	DEFAULT	DEFINE OPTIONS FOR THE PERFORMANCE MONITOR
J1ASMPERF	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMPERF	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

ASMWTO	DEFAULT	CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLY OF WTOEXIT
J1ASMWTO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMWTO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMWTOR	DEFAULT	CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLY OF WTOREXIT
J1ASMWTOR	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMWTOR	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMSTGID	DEFAULT	DEFINE ALLOWABLE BS2000 COMMANDS FOR STGID
J1ASMSTGID	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMSTGID	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMUSRID	DEFAULT	USER EXIT TO DETERMINE USERID
J1ASMUSRID	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMUSRID	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMUXIT	DEFAULT	CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLY FOR RHDCUXIT
J1ASMUXIT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMUXIT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMOPTF	DEFAULT	CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLY FOR RHDCOPTF
J1ASMOPTF	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMOPTF	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMSRTT	DEFAULT	CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLY FOR RHDCSRRT
J1ASMSRTT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMSRTT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMCICS	DEFAULT	CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLIES FOR CICS SUPPORT
J1ASMCICS	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMCICS	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB4	NO	JOB 4 WILL DO THE SMP/E "RECEIVE"
J1JOB4	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB4	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
RECEIVE	DEFAULT	THIS STEP PERFORMS THE SMP/E RECEIVE OF SYSMODS
J1RECEIVE	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2RECEIVE	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB5	NO	JOB 5 WILL DO THE SMP/E "APPLY"
J1JOB5	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB5	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
APPLY	DEFAULT	THIS STEP PERFORMS SMP/E APPLY PROCESSING
J1APPLY	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2APPLY	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB6	NO	JOB 6 BUILDS THE IDMS RUNTIME ENVIRONMENT
J1JOB6	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB6	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

BUILDCAT	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE IDMS SYSTEM CATALOG
J1BUILDCAT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2BUILDCAT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
LOADDML	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE LOADS THE IDMS SYSTEM SEGMENT
J1LOADDML	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2LOADDML	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
APPLDICT	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE APPLDICT SEGMENT
J1APPLDICT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2APPLDICT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASFDICT	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE ASFDICT SEGMENT
J1ASFDICT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASFDICT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB7	NO	JOB 7 IS THE IDMS/DB DEMO
J1JOB7	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB7	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
DBDEMO	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE NETWORK DEMO DATABASE
J1DBDEMO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2DBDEMO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB8	NO	JOB 8 IS THE IDMS/SQL DEMO
J1JOB8	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB8	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
SQLDEMO	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE SQL DEMO DATABASE
J1SQLDEMO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2SQLDEMO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB9	NO	JOB 9 IS THE IDMS/DC DEMO
J1JOB9	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB9	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
DCDEMO	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE WILL RUN THE CA-IDMS/DC DEMO
J1DCDEMO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2DCDEMO	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB10	NO	JOB 10 RUNS THE FINAL DATABASE BACKUP
J1JOB10	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB10	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
BACKUP	DEFAULT	THIS STEP WILL BACKUP ALL INSTALLED DATABASE FILES
J1BACKUP	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2BACKUP	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB11	NO	JOB 11 WILL DO THE SMP/E "ACCEPT"
J1JOB11	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB11	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ACCEPT	DEFAULT	THIS STEP PERFORMS SMP/E ACCEPT PROCESSING
J1ACCEPT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ACCEPT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

C.1 CA-IDMS CAIJMP Parameter List

```
*****
*          WORK FIELD PARAMETERS - DO NOT USE
*
*****
```

LOPAGE	@DICTLOPAGE@	WORKFIELD
MGLOPAGE	@DCMSGLOPAGE@	WORKFIELD
LDLOPAGE	@DCLODLOPAGE@	WORKFIELD
RNLOPAGE	@DCRUNLOPAGE@	WORKFIELD
SCLOPAGE	@DCSCRLOPAGE@	WORKFIELD
LGLOPAGE	@DCLOGLOPAGE@	WORKFIELD
BS2K	NO	OPERATING SYSTEM BS2000
BS2KJOBNAME	JOBNAME	CURRENT JOB/WORKFIELD
ADDON	NO	TYPE OF INSTALL
TDMPBKSZ	""	WORK FIELD: BLOCKSIZE OF DUMPTAPE
MAXPAGSZ	""	WORK FIELD: MAXIMUM PAGE SIZE FOR GLBLDMCL
DEMPAGSZ	""	WORK FIELD: MAXIMUM PAGE SIZE FOR DEMODMCL
*	""	COMMENT WORK FIELD
\$\$COMMENT ===== end of Member IJCLPARM =====		

Appendix D. CA-IDMS Tools CAIIJMP Parameter List

D.1 Overview	D-3
D.2 CA-IDMS Tools CAIIJMP Parameters	D-4

D.1 Overview

This appendix contains a listing of CAIJMP parameters, which is part of the CAIJMP job output. You can refer to this listing during the CA-IDMS Tools installation process.

D.2 CA-IDMS Tools CAIJMP Parameters

```
$$COMMENT ===== Member IJCLPARM =====
$$COMMENT 12345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012
*****
***** CA-IDMS/TOOLS RELEASE 15.0 *****
**** THIS TAPE CONTAINS RELEASE 15.0 OF THE CA-IDMS/TOOLS.
**** THIS TAPE CAN BE INSTALLED ONLY IN AN BS2000 ENVIRONMENT.
**** PRODUCT PARAMETERS
* SPECIFY THE PRODUCTS TO BE INSTALLED BY
* CODING THE APPROPRIATE PARAMETER(S) AS
* INPUT TO IJMP WITH A VALUE OF - INSTALL
*****
ADS-ALIVE      NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ADS-ALIVE
                05
ADS-TRACE      NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ADS-TRACE
                ME
DB-ANALYZER    NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB-ANALYZER
                H4
DB-AUDIT       NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB-AUDIT
                H7
DB-EXTRACTOR   NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DATABASE EXTRACTOR
                OT
DB-REORG       NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DB-REORG
                IR
DC-SORT        NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DC-SORT
                O2
DICT-MIGRATOR  NO   PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR
                MV
```

DICT-MOD-EDITOR	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MODULE EDITOR M3
DICT-QUERY-FACIL	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY QUERY FACILITY M4
DML-ONLINE	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DML-ONLINE KJ KJ2
ENFORCER	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ENFORCER O3
JOURNAL-ANALYZER	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/JOURNAL ANALYZER FP
LOG-ANALYZER	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/LOG ANALYZER F7
MASTERKEY	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/MASTERKEY F8
ONLINE-LOG-DSPLY	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/ONLINE LOG DISPLAY F9
SAS0	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/SAS0 O4
SCHEMA-MAPPER	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/SCHEMA MAPPER GI
TASK-ANALYZER	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/TASK ANALYZER O6
DICT-MIG-ASSIST	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR ASSISTANT MU
GENERAL-COMPARE	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL COMPARE N4
GENERAL-DBIO	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL DBIO IV
GENERAL-EDITOR	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL EDITOR N2
GENERAL-IDMS	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL IDMS O7
GENERAL-MAPPER	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL MAPPER N3
GENERAL-PASCAL	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL PASCAL KB
GENERAL-SERVICE	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL SERVICE J8
GENERAL-SORT	NO	PRODUCT: CA-IDMS/GENERAL SORT KP

D.2 CA-IDMS Tools CAIJMP Parameters

```
*****
*          *****      PASSWORD PARAMETERS      *****
*          ****
*          *      CODE PASSWORD PARAMETERS WITH PASSWORD      *
*          *      VALUES REQUIRED FOR YOUR PRODUCT MIX.      *
*          *
*****  
  
PW1      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW2      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW3      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW4      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW5      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW6      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW7      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW8      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW9      " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW10     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW11     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW12     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW13     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW14     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW15     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW16     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW17     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW18     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW19     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD  
PW20     " "      PRODUCT PASSWORD
```

```
*****
*          *****      PRODUCT COMPONENTS      *****
*          ****
*          *      COMPONENTS ARE SET BY PRODUCT SELECTION      *
*          *      AND SHOULD NOT BE CODED AS INPUT TO IJMP      *
*          *
*****  
  
05      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/ADS-ALIVE  
ME      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/ADS-TRACE  
H4      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DB-ANALYZER  
H7      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DB-AUDIT  
OT      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DATABASE EXTRACTOR  
IR      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DB-REORG  
O2      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DC-SORT  
MV      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR  
M3      DEFAULT    COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MODULE EDITOR
```

M4	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY QUERY FACILITY
KJ	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DML-ONLINE
KJ2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DML-ONLINE FOR CICS
O3	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/ENFORCER
FP	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/JOURNAL ANALYZER
F7	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/LOG ANALYZER
F8	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/MASTERKEY
F9	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/ONLINE LOG DISPLAY
04	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/SASO
GI	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/SCHEMA MAPPER
06	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/TASK ANALYZER
MU	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR ASSISTANT
N4	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL COMPARE
IV	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL DBIO
N2	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL EDITOR
O7	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL IDMS
N3	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL MAPPER
KB	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL PASCAL
J8	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL SERVICE
KP	DEFAULT	COMPONENT CA-IDMS/GENERAL SORT

* PRODUCT INSTALLATION *
*** AND RUN-TIME PARAMETERS ***
* *
* USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO SPECIFY *
* THE INSTALLATION ENVIRONMENT AND RUN-TIME *
* OPTIONS FOR THE PRODUCTS SELECTED *
* *

* COMMON PRODUCT *
*** RUN-TIME ***
* PARAMETERS *

HLPDICT	@TDICTNAME@ ALTERNATE DICTIONARY USED FOR HELP MODULES
HLPNODE	"" ALTERNATE NODE USED FOR HELP MODULES
HLPVERS	1 VERSION NUMBER OF HELP MODULES

<pre>***** * GENERAL DBIO * *** RUN-TIME *** * PARAMETERS * *****</pre>		
SIZEVAL	CYL	INDICATES HOW DATA IS TO BE READ WHEN USING EXCP PROCESSING AND SPECIFIES THE TYPE OF BUFFERS FOR THE MAXBUF AND DEFBUF KEYWORDS (CYL -- READ CYLINDERS) (TRK -- READ TRACKS) (BLK -- READ BLOCKS)
MAXBUF	2	MAXIMUM BUFFERS PER READ (1 TO 1000000)
DEFBUF	1	AVERAGE BUFFERS PER READ (1 TO 1000000)
<pre>***** * GENERAL SORT * *** RUN-TIME *** * PARAMETERS * *****</pre>		
MAIN	10000	AMOUNT OF IN-CORE SORT STORAGE (0 THRU N)
AUX	10000	AMOUNT OF SECONDARY SORT STORAGE (0 THRU N)
MINRBUF	100	NUMBER OF RECORDS PER PAGE (0 THRU N)
LIMLOCK	N	PREVENT USERS FROM SETLIMIT FACILITY (Y/N)
EXITKEY	PF24	ADS PREPROCESSOR EXIT KEY (PA1...PF24)
<pre>***** * ADS-ALIVE * *** RUN-TIME *** * PARAMETERS * *****</pre>		
USGTSK	ADSALIVE	TASK CODE TO INVOKE ADS-ALIVE
PCHOFF	3800	OFFSET FOR IMPLANT
SWEEP	Y	AREA SWEEP FOR DIALOG WILD CARDS (Y/N)
AUTO	Y	NON-INTERRUPT MODE ALLOWED (Y/N)
QKEEP	3	NUMBER OF DAYS TO RETAIN DEBUG QUEUE RECORDS
PROKEEP	10	NUMBER OF DAYS TO RETAIN PROFILE QUEUE RECORDS
DICTDEF	D	USE DEFAULT DICTNAME OR PROFILE DICTNAME (D/P)

```

*****
*      DATABASE EXTRACTOR      *
***      INSTALLATION      ***
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

UVADATASTPG	0370000	START PAGE FOR USV-DATA-AREA
UVDATANMPG	3000	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR USV-DATA-AREA
UVF1XTNT	6000,100	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "USVFIL1"
DBXPGSZ	4096	BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR DBX DATABASE
DBXDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "USVFIL1"
DBXDSN	DBX.USVFIL1	DATASET NAME FOR DBX DB FILE USVFIL1
DBXUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	DISK UNIT FOR DBX DATABASE FILE
DBXVOL	@DISKVOL@	DISK VOLUMN FOR DBX DATABASE FILE


```

*****
*      DATABASE EXTRACTOR      *
***      RUN-TIME      ***
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

DBXTSK	DBX	TASK CODE TO INVOKE DBX
STKENTS	50	NUMBER OF ENTRIES IN DBX STACK (30 TO 1000)
COPY	ANYONE	WHO USER CAN COPY FROM (ANYONE/DBXADMIN/USER)
RETSEQ	YES	RETAIN PHYSICAL SEQ OF MEMBER RECORDS (YES/NO)
XRECURO	YES	EXTRACT OWNER OF RECURSIVE RECORDS (YES/NO)
BGINMID	NO	BEGIN VIEW/EDIT IN MIDDLE OF PATH (YES/NO)
NLYZ008	WARNING	HAVE NLYZ008 WARNING/ERROR MSG (WARNING/ERROR)

DCSORT-CICS	NO	INSTALL DC-SORT FOR CICS (YES/NO)
-------------	----	-----------------------------------


```

*****
*      DICTIONARY MIGRATOR      *
***      RUN-TIME      ***
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

XPICCOVR	N	EXCLUDE PICTURE OVERRIDES
XSUBEL	N	EXCLUDE SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS
MAPDCMP	N	MAP DECOMPILE OPTION
SHARRDY	N	READY IN SHARED UPDATE (OBJECT DICT)
EXCLRDY	N	READY IN EXCLUSIVE UPDATE " "
DFLTOFF	N	DEFAULT IS OFF
PROGALL	N	DISPLAY PROGRAMS WITH ALL
XCLIST	N	EXCLUDE CLIST (DCMT V NEW COPIES)
XCLIMM	N	EXCLUDE IMMEDIATE IN CLIST
XCLDBN	N	EXCLUDE DICTIONARY NAME IN CLIST
XCLVER	N	EXCLUDE VERSION IN CLIST
NOUDC	N	NO UDC COMMENT SYNTAX
XUDNREF	N	EXCLUDE ALL UDN REFERENCES

XUDNREL	N	EXCLUDE ELEMENT UDN REFERENCES
XUDNRAT	N	EXCLUDE ATTRIBUTE UDN REFERENCES
XUDNRSY	N	EXCLUDE SYSTEM UDN REFERENCES
XUDNRC	N	EXCLUDE RECORD UDN REFERENCES
XUDNRMD	N	EXCLUDE MODULE UDN REFERENCES
XUDNRPG	N	EXCLUDE PROGRAM UDN REFERENCES
XUDNRUS	N	EXCLUDE USER UDN REFERENCES
DBQUOTE	N	DOUBLE QUOTE
EXNTWK	N	EXTRACT IDMSNTWK COMPONENTS
XELEMNT	N	OMIT ELEMENTS FROM EXTRACTION
XELECOB	N	OMIT ELE FROM EXTRACT WHEN COBOLFMT
EXSYREC	N	EXTRACT SYSTEM RECORDS
XUDNXRT	N	SKIP ALL UDN EXTRACTION
XUDNXEL	N	SKIP ELEMENT UDN EXTRACTION
XUDNXRC	N	SKIP RECORD UDN EXTRACTION
XUDNXMD	N	SKIP MODULE UDN EXTRACTION
XUDNXUS	N	SKIP USER UDN EXTRACTION
XUDNXAT	N	SKIP ATTRIBUTE UDN EXTRACTION
XUDNXSY	N	SKIP SYSTEM UDN EXTRACTION
XIMSYNR	N	OMIT SYNTAX FILE DISPLAY RPT ON IMP
DELADDS	N	USE DELETE/ADD SYNTAX (NOT MODIFY)
EXTSAME	N	EXTRACT SAME AS ENTITIES
DBABEND	N	ABEND ON DATABASE ERROR
NOEXATT	N	OMIT EXTRACTION OF CLASS-ATTRIBUTES
NOEXCLS	N	OMIT EXTRACTION OF CLASS
NOEXSYS	N	OMIT EXTRACTION OF SYSTEMS
STOPVER	N	STOP AFTER VALD IF ERRORS (CC=8)
NOATRXP	N	LEVEL=ONLY NO ATTR EXPLOSION
NOSAUTH	N	BYPASS SOURCE DICT SECURITY CHECKING
NOTAUTH	N	BYPASS TARGET DICT SECURITY CHECKING
ENTLAB	N	PUT ENTITY TYPE LABELS IN DDLUPD
ABGNRC	N	CREATE ADSOBCOM SOURCE GEN KEYFILE
XSIGNON	N	OMIT SIGNON FROM SYNTAX FILES
XSIGMAP	N	OMIT SIGNON FROM MAP SYNTAX FILES RHDCDEL/RHDCUPD
XEQUDAT	N	SKIP EXTRACTION OF ENTITIES WITH EQUAL DATES

```
*****
*      DICT MIGRATOR ASSIST      *
***      INSTALLATION      ***
*          PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

XMDATASTPG	0300000	START PAGE FOR XDM-DATA-AREA
XMDATANMPG	600	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR XDM-DATA-AREA
XMF1XTNT	1200,10	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "XDMFIL1"
DMAPGSZ	4096	BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR DMA DATABASE
DMADEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "XDMFIL1"
DMADSN	DMA.XDMFIL1	DATASET NAME FOR DMA DB FILE XDMFIL1
DMAUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	DISK UNIT FOR DMA DATABASE FILE
DMAVOL	@DISKVOL@	DISK VOLUMN FOR DMA DATABASE FILE

```

*****
*   DICT MIGRATOR ASSIST    *
***      RUN-TIME      ***
*       PARAMETERS     *
*****
```

DMATSK	DMA	TASK CODE TO INVOKE DMA
--------	-----	-------------------------


```

*****
*   DICT MODULE EDITOR    *
***      RUN-TIME      ***
*       PARAMETERS     *
*****
```

LOCK	Y	SET LONGTERM DBKEY LOCKS (Y/N)
SCROLL	PAGE	SCROLL AMOUNT (PAGE/HALF/CSR)
DELIMIT	;	COMMAND DELIMITER
PAD	N	PAD CHARACTER (DEFAULT SPACE)
VERSION	HIGHEST	DEFAULT IDD VERSION (HIGHEST/LOWEST)
SECURITY	I	SECURITY SYSTEM (I=IDD, D=DBMS, B=DBMS+IDD)
USERID	INPUT	USERID CHANGES (INPUT=ALLOW, PROT=NOT ALLOW)
MODSORT	Y	MODULE SORT PERFORMED (Y/N)
SETDB	Y	RESET DATABASE/NODE TO DME ENTRY VALUE (Y/N)
CLRKEND	Y	CLEAR KEY FUNCTION (Y=END, N=RESHOW)


```

*****
*       DML-ONLINE      *
***      INSTALLATION    ***
*       PARAMETERS     *
*****
```

* DML-ONLINE FOR CICS INSTALLATION OPTION *

DMLO-CICS	NO	INSTALL DML-ONLINE FOR CICS (YES/NO)
-----------	----	--------------------------------------

* DML-ONLINE DATABASE FILE DEFINITION *

UDDATASTPG	0360000	START PAGE FOR USD-DATA-AREA
UDDATANMPG	600	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR USD-DATA-AREA
UDF1XTNT	1200,10	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "USDFIL1"
DMLOPGSZ	4096	BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR DMLO DATABASE
DMLODEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "USDFIL1"
DMLODSN	DMLO.PROFILE	DATASET NAME FOR DMLO DB FILE PROFILE
DMLOUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	DISK UNIT FOR DMLO DATABASE FILE
DMLOVOL	@DISKVOL@	DISK VOLUMN FOR DMLO DATABASE FILE

```
*****
*          DML-ONLINE      *
***        RUN-TIME       ***
*          PARAMETERS     *
*****
```

LOWCASE	N	LOWER CASE OPTION (Y/N)
DPRTCL	1	IDMS DC PRINT CLASS
TPRTCL	A	TSO PRINT CLASS
CPRTCL	A	CICS PRINT CLASS
DISPLAY	COBOL	DISPLAY FMT (COBOL/VERTICAL)
AUTOHEX	ON	AUTOHEX OPTION (ON/OFF)
AUTOBND	ON	AUTO-BIND OPTION (ON/OFF)
MAPIN	FAST	DATA/COMMAND INP (FAST/STEP)
CLIST	FAST	CLIST EXECUTION (FAST/STEP)
DSPCMND	INPUT	COMMAND DISPLAY (INPUT/USED)
LRFSCRN	NORM	LRF SCREEN FMT (NORM/MAX)
MODE	EXPERT	SESSION MODE (EXPERT/MENU)
USERXIT	(DYNAM,OFF)	USER EXIT OPTION
GLOBID	DMLOSYS	SYS. PROF/CLIST OWNER ID
ADMIN	USERID01	DMLO ADMINISTRATOR SIGNON
ADMIN2	USERID02	DMLO ADMINISTRATOR SIGNON
NONDspl	C'	NONDISPLAY TRANSLATION
USERID	INPUT	CHG USERID ? (INPUT/PROT)
DEFdict	"	DEFAULT SIGNON DICTIONARY
DEFnode	"	DEFAULT SIGNON DICT. NODE
PRFDBNM	DMLO	PROFILE SEGMENT (DB) NAME
PRFDBND	"	PROFILE SEGMENT (DB) NODE
SBUFNM	SBUF	DEFAULT SCR REC NAME PFX
QBUFNM	QBUF	DEFAULT QUE REC NAME PFX
SQBUFL	4096	DEFAULT S/Q REC MAX LEN
ATTNKEY	PA1	ATTENTION/INTERRUPT
SNONKEY	(PF2,PF14)	SIGNON HELP (P)
PROFKEY	(PF4,PF16)	PROFILE LIST (P)
HELPKEY	(PF1,PF13)	SESSION HELP
SHOWKEY	(PF2,PF14)	SHOW PFKEYS
PENDKEY	(PF3,PF15)	END
DISPKEY	(PF4,PF16)	REDISPLAY
PGUPKEY	(PF7,PF19)	SCROLL UP
PGDNKEY	(PF8,PF20)	SCROLL DOWN
DEFENTK	Y	DEFAULT USE OF ENTER KEY
DEFDBNM	"	DEFAULT SIGNON DBNAME

```
*****
*          ENFORCER      *
***        INSTALLATION   ***
*          PARAMETERS     *
*****
```

* ENFORCER DATABASE FILES DEFINITION *

EXCTRLSTPG	0310001	START PAGE FOR ESX-CTRL-AREA
EXCTRLNMPG	500	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESX-CTRL-AREA
EXLOADSTPG	0310751	START PAGE FOR ESX-LOAD-AREA

EXLOADNMPG	200	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESX-LOAD-AREA
EXINDEXSTPG	0311001	START PAGE FOR ESX-INDEX-AREA
EXINDEXNMPG	100	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESX-INDEX-AREA
EXF1XTNT	1000,10	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESXFIL1"
EXF2XTNT	400,10	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESXFIL2"
EXF3XTNT	200,10	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESXFIL3"
ENFRDEV1	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ESXFIL1"
ENFRDEV2	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ESXFIL2"
ENFRDEV3	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ESXFIL3"
ENFRPGSZ	4096	BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR ENFORCER DATABASE
ENFRDSN1	ENFORCER.CTRL	DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER DB FILE CTRL
ENFRDSN2	ENFORCER.LOAD	DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER DB FILE LOAD
ENFRDSN3	ENFORCER.INDEX	DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER DB FILE INDEX
ENFRUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	DISK UNIT FOR ENFORCER DATABASE FILES
ENFRVOL	@DISKVOL@	DISK VOLUME FOR ENFORCER DATABASE FILES

* ENFORCER LOAD LIBRARY DEFINITION *

ENFRLOAD	DDNAME FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRLDSN	ENFORCER.LOADLIB DATASET NAME FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRLDUNIT	@DISKUNIT@ OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRLDVOL	@DISKVOL@ OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRDXTNT	100,10 DISK SPACE FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB
ENFRDBKSZ	STD BLOCKSIZE FOR ENFORCER LOADLIB

* ENFORCER *

*** RUN-TIME ***

* PARAMETERS *

ENFTSK	ENFORCER	TASK CODE TO INVOKE ENFORCER
LOKMODE	D	DEADLOCK PROCESS (D=DEADLOCK, B=BATCH, M=IDDM)
DSPACE	Y	SPACE DELIMITED WORDS ALLOWED (Y=YES, N=NO)
DDASH	Y	DASH(-) DELIMITED WORDS ALLOWED (Y=YES, N=NO)
DULINE	Y	ULINE(_) DELIMITED WORDS ALLOWED (Y=YES, N=NO)

* MASTERKEY *

*** INSTALLATION ***

* PARAMETERS *

SKDATASTPG	0330000	START PAGE FOR SSK-DATA-AREA
SKDATANMPG	600	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR SSK-DATA-AREA
SKF1XTNT	1200,100	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "SSKFIL1"
MKEYPGSZ	4096	BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR MASTERKEY DATABASE
MKEYDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "SSKFIL1"
MKEYDSN	MASTRKEY.DATASEG	DATASET NAME FOR MASTERKEY DB FILE
MKEYUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	DISK UNIT FOR MASTERKEY DATABASE FILE
MKEYVOL	@DISKVOL@	DISK VOLUMN FOR MASTERKEY DATABASE FILE

```

*****
*      MASTERKEY      *
***      RUN-TIME      ***
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

CLTDICT	@TDICTNAME@	DICTNAME FOR TRANSIENT CLISTS
CLTNODE	" "	DICTNODE FOR TRANSIENT CLISTS


```

*****
*      ONLINE LOG DISPLAY      *
***      RUN-TIME      ***
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

LOGDTSK	LOGD	TASK CODE TO INVOKE ONLINE LOG DISPLAY
---------	------	--


```

*****
*      SASO      *
***      INSTALLATION      ***
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

ESCTRLSTPG	8100001	START PAGE FOR ESS-CTRL-AREA
ESCTRLSTBK	1	START BLOCK FOR ESS-CTRL-AREA
ESCTRLNMPG	95	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-CTRL-AREA
ESTEXTSTPG	8100101	START PAGE FOR ESS-TEXT-AREA
ESTEXTSTBK	96	START BLOCK FOR ESS-TEXT-AREA
ESTEXTNMPG	760	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-TEXT-AREA
ESINDEXSTPG	8100901	START PAGE FOR ESS-INDEX-AREA
ESINDEXSTBK	856	START BLOCK FOR ESS-INDEX-AREA
ESINDEXNMPG	95	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-INDEX-AREA
ESRELSESTPG	8101001	START PAGE FOR ESS-RELSE-AREA
ESRELSESTBK	1	START BLOCK FOR ESS-RELSE-AREA
ESRELSENMPG	240	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-RELSE-AREA
ESRTEXTSTPG	8101301	START PAGE FOR ESS-RTEXT-AREA
ESRTEXTSTBK	241	START BLOCK FOR ESS-RTEXT-AREA
ESRTEXTNMPG	235	NUMBER OF PAGES/BLOCKS FOR ESS-RTEXT-AREA
ESCTRLDSTPG	8101601	START PAGE FOR ESS-CTRLD-AREA
ESCTRLDSTBK	1	START BLOCK FOR ESS-CTRLD-AREA
ESCTRLDNMPG	3	NUMBER OF PAGES FOR ESS-CTRLD-AREA
ESF1XTNT	1900,10	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESSFIL1"
ESF2XTNT	950,10	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESSFIL2"
ESF3XTNT	6,1	DISK SPACE FOR FILE "ESSFIL3"
SASOPGSZ	4096	BLOCK/PAGE SIZE FOR SASO DATABASE
SASODSN1	SASO.PRIMARY	DATASET NAME FOR SASO DB FILE PRIMARY
SASODSN2	SASO.RELEASE	DATASET NAME FOR SASO DB FILE RELEASE

SASODSN3	SASO.DOCUMENT	DATASET NAME FOR SASO DB FILE DOCUMENT
SASODEV1	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ESSFIL1"
SASODEV2	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ESSFIL2"
SASODEV3	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "ESSFIL3"
SASOUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	DISK UNIT FOR SASO DATABASE FILES
SASOVOL	@DISKVOL@	DISK VOLUMN FOR SASO DATABASE FILES
SASOINTID	254	UNIQUE INTERNAL SASO DOCUMENT ID (36 TO 255)
SASODOCID	SPG	DBNAME FOR SASO IN DATABASE NAME TABLE
SASODOCDSN	SASO.SPGTEXT	DATASET NAME FOR SASO DOCUMENT FILE

* SASO *
*** RUN-TIME ***
* PARAMETERS *

SASOTSK	SASO	TASK CODE TO INVOKE SASO
DEFDOC	SPG	DEFAULT DOCUMENT DBNAME TABLE ENTRY
JCL1	" "	DEFAULT JOB CARD LINE FOR INITIAL USER PROFILES
JCL2	" "	DEFAULT JOB CARD LINE FOR INITIAL USER PROFILES
JCL3	" "	DEFAULT JOB CARD LINE FOR INITIAL USER PROFILES

* *
**** OPERATING SYSTEM & SITE SPECIFIC ****
* PARAMETERS *
* *
* USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE *
* YOUR ENVIRONMENT TO CAIIJMP (SUCH AS *
* OPERATING SYSTEM DATASET NAMES, DEVICE *
* TYPES, UTILITY NAMES, PRODUCTS PREVIOUSLY *
* INSTALLED, ETC.). *
* *

OPSYS	BS2K	OPERATING SYSTEM BS2000 V9.0 AND UP
OPSYSREL	" "	RELEASE LEVEL (AE, EX OR BLANK) FOR MSP/SP
BSJCARD1	"REMARK LOGON JCL 1"	LOGON JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD2	"REMARK LOGON JCL 2"	LOGON JCL-CARD 2
BSJCARD3	"REMARK LOGON JCL 3"	LOGON JCL-CARD 3
BSJCARD4	"REMARK LOGON JCL 4"	LOGON JCL-CARD 4
BSJCARD5	"RESOURCES=PAR(CPU-LIMIT=NO)"	ENTER JCL-CARD 1
BSJCARD6	"REMARK ENTER JCL 2"	ENTER JCL-CARD 2
STCOBNAM	START-COBOL85-COMPILER	START OF COBOL COMPILER
BSCOBLIB	\$TASKLIB	NAME OF COBOL RUNTIME LIBRARY

* BSCOBRU1	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 1
* BSCOBRU2	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 2
* BSCOBRU3	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 3
* BSCOBRU4	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 4
* BSCOBRU5	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 5
* BSCOBRU6	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 6
* BSCOBRU7	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 7
* BSCOBRU8	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 8
* BSCOBRU9	""	COBRUN PARAMETER 9
STARCNAM	START-ARCHIVE	START OF ARCHIVE PROGRAM
STASMNAM	START-ASSEMBH	START OF ASSEMBLER COMPILER
* BSASMPRM	LIST=YES,ALTLIB=YES,XREF=YES,SYMDIC=NO	ASSEMBLER PARAMS
* BSASMSDF	NO (YES/NO)	SDF INTERFACE FOR ASSEMBLER H
BSASMSML	\$MACROLIB	NAME OF SYSTEM MACROLIB (SYSLIB)
STLNKNAM	START-BINDER	START OF LINKAGE EDITOR
BSSRTNAM	\$SORT	NAME OF SORT
BSSRTLIB	\$SORTLIB	NAME OF SORT RUNTIME LIBRARY
STEDTNAM	START-EDT	START OF EDITOR
STLMSNAM	START-LMS	START OF LIBRARY MAINTENANCE SYSTEM
* BSLMSLIB	\$LMSLIB	NAME OF LMS RUNTIME LIBRARY
TAPEUNIT	T-C4	
DISKUNIT	""	DEFAULT UNIT TYPE FOR ALL DISK DATASETS
DISKVOL	""	DEFAULT VOLSER FOR ALL DISK DATASETS
DISKACCM	UPAM	DISK FILE ACCESS METHOD
WORKUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT TYPE FOR WORKFILES
WORKVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR WORKFILES
WORKXTNT	2001,600	SPACE FOR ALL TEMPORARY WORK DATASETS
PDETYPE	DYNAMIC	(DYNAMIC/STATIC) DYNAMIC WILL ALLOW THE THE CENTRAL VERSION TO USE NULL PDE(S)

```
*****
*          NEW STORPROT PARAMETER
*
*          THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DETERMINES IF YOU WANT
*          PROTECT OR NOPROTECT ON YOUR PROGRAM STATEMENTS.
*
*          STORPROT YES MEANS THAT THE PROGRAM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES PROTECT AND THE SYSTEM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES NOPROTECT.
*
*          STORPROT NO MEANS THAT THE PROGRAM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES NOPROTECT AND THE SYSTEM STATEMENT
*          SPECIFIES PROTECT.
*****
```

STORPROT "YES"

```

*****
*                                *
****      BS2000 JCL SYNTAX PROCESSING      ****
*                                *
*      ISP DEFAULT COMMANDS USED IN THE PRODUCED   *
*      INSTALLATION JCL-STREAM.                      *
*      DON'T CHANGES THESE VALUES.                  *
*                                *
*****
```

CMDCALL	CALL-PROC
CMDEXEC	START-PROG
CMDSTEP	SET-JOB-STEP
* CMDFILE	FILE
CMDCFILE	CRE-FILE
CMDIFILE	IMPORT-FILE
CMDMFIAT	MOD-FILE-ATTR
CMDSFILI	ADD-FILE-LINK
* CMDSYSF	SYSFILE
CMDASDTA	ASS-SYSDTA
CMDASLST	ASS-SYSLST
CMDASOUT	ASS-SYSOUT
CMDASOPT	ASS-SYSOPT
CMDASIPT	ASS-SYSIPT
* CMDDROP	DROP
CMDHOLD	HOLD-PROG
CMDRESU	RESU-PROG
CMDSTSW	MOD-JOB-SW
CMDLOGN	SET-LOGON-PAR
CMDLOGF	EXIT-JOB
CMDRMRK	REMARK
CMDENTR	ENT-JOB
CMDRLSE	REM-FILE-LINK
CMDERAS	DEL-FILE
* CMDPARM	PARAM
CMDSKIP	SKIP-COM
CMDPROC	BEG-PROC
CMDENDP	EXIT-PROC

NEW-INSTALL	YES	INITIAL R14.0 CA-IDMS/TOOLS INSTALL (YES/NO)
WIUPGRAD	NO	UPGRADE FROM TOOLS 12.0 TO TOOLS 15.0

```
*****
*          *
****      SELECT GENERAL IDMS-DB PARAMETERS      ***
*          *
*****
```

GJBASE-GENLVL	0109	CA-IDMS BASE TAPE GENLEVEL INSTALLED
SYSVERNUM	120	IDMS SYSTEM VERSION NUMBER
GLBLDMCL	R150DMCL	NAME OF YOUR GLOBAL DMCL LOAD MODULE
NEWDMCL	" "	NAME FOR NEW GLOBAL DMCL MODULE THAT WILL BE
*		CREATED. SPECIFY A NEW NAME SO YOUR CURRENT
*		PRODUCTION GLOBAL DMCL WILL NOT BE DESTROYED.
BUFSTRGTYP	IDMS	STORAGE TYPE FOR DMCL BUFFERS (IDMS/OPSYS)
DBNAMETB	R150DBTB	NAME OF YOUR DB NAME TABLE LOAD MODULE
IDMS-CICS	NO	HAS CA-IDMS/CICS BEEN INSTALLED (YES/NO)
PRESS-PACK	NO	IS CA-IDMS/PRESS PACK INSTALLED (YES/NO)


```
*****
*          *
****      LIBRARY PARAMETERS FOLLOW      ***
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO CONTROL      *
*      THE ALLOCATION AND NAMING CONVENTION OF      *
*      LIBRARIES REQUIRED FOR CA-IDMS/DB.      *
*          *
*****
```

PREFIX	" "	PREFIX FOR ALL LIBRARIES AND DATABASE FILES
PREFIDMS	" "	PREFIX USED WITH BASE INSTALL OF IDMS 15.0
PREFBOOT	"F0WI1B."	PREFIX for BOOT Library
PREFJBL	@PREFBOOT@	PREFIX FOR Job SYSLST and SYSOUT


```
*****
*          *
*          SELECT      *
*          CA-DBTOOLS      *
*** INSTALLATION LIBRARY      ***
*          PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

* THE FOLLOWING LIBRARIES WILL CONTAIN THE SOURCES, MACROS *

* LOAD MODULES AND APARS OFFLOADED FROM THIS INSTALLATION *

* TAPE. *

INDTSRCDSN	DBMS.SRCLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.SRCLIB"
INDSRCUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "DBMS.SRCLIB"
INDSRCVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "DBMS.SRCLIB"
INDSRCXTNT	500,10	DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.SRCLIB"
INDSRCBKSZ	STD	BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "DBMS.SRCLIB"

INDTLNKDSN	DBMS.LNKLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.LNKLIB"
INDTLNKUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "DBMS.LNKLIB"
INDTLNKVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "DBMS.LNKLIB"
INDTLNKTNT	50,10	DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.LNKLIB"
INDTLNKBKSZ	STD	BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "DBMS.LNKLIB"
INDTMACDSN	DBMS.MACLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.MACLIB"
INDTMACUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "DBMS.MACLIB"
INDTMACVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "DBMS.MACLIB"
INDTMACXTNT	50,10	DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.MACLIB"
INDTMACBKSZ	STD	BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "DBMS.MACLIB"
INDTLOADDSN	DBMS.LOADLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.LOADLIB"
INDTLOADUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "DBMS.LOADLIB"
INDTLOADVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "DBMS.LOADLIB"
INDTLOADXTNT	1000,10	DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.LOADLIB"
INDTLOADBKSZ	STD	BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "DBMS.LOADLIB"
INDTAPADSN	DBMS.APARLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "DBMS.APARLIB"
INDTAPAUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "DBMS.APARLIB"
INDTAPAVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "DBMS.APARLIB"
INDTAPAXTNT	50,10	DISK SPACE FOR "DBMS.APARLIB"
INDTAPABKSZ	STD	BLOCKSIZE FOR BS2000 "DBMS.APARLIB"

```
*****
*          SELECT          *
***      "IDMS" LIBRARIES ***      ****
*          PARAMETERS          *
*****      *****  

* THE FOLLOWING LIBRARIES CONTAIN THE SOURCES      *
* MACROS, LOAD MODULES AND APARS FROM THE          *
* CA-IDMS/DB /DC INSTALLATION                      *
```

INDSRCDSN	IDMS.SRCLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.SRCLIB"
INDMACDSN	IDMS.MACLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.MACLIB"
INDLOADDSN	IDMS.LOADLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.LOADLIB"
INDPAPADSN	IDMS.APARLIB	DATASET NAME FOR "IDMS.APARLIB"

```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***      "DBA" LIBRARIES      ***
*          PARAMETERS      *
*****
* THE DBA LOADLIB CONTAINS THE DMCL, DATABASE      *
* NAME TABLE, SCHEMA AND SUBSCHEMA LOAD MODULES.   *
* THE DBA SRCLIB                                *
*****
DBALOADDSSN    DBA.LOADLIB      DATASET NAME FOR "DBA.LOADLIB"
DBASRCDSN      DBA.SRCLIB      DATASET NAME FOR "DBA.SRCLIB"

*****
*          TEMPORARY WORK DATASET PARAMETERS      ***
*          USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE   *
*          TEMPORARY WORK DATASETS.                 *
*****
WRK1DSN        WRK1WORK      DATASET NAME FOR "WRK1WORK"
WRK1UNIT@      @WORKUNIT@    OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK1WORK"
WRK1VOL@       @WORKVOL@    OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK1WORK"
WRK1XTNT@     ""           WORK SPACE FOR "WRK1WORK"

WRK2DSN        WRK2WORK      DATASET NAME FOR "WRK2WORK"
WRK2UNIT@      @WORKUNIT@    OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK2WORK"
WRK2VOL@       @WORKVOL@    OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK2WORK"
WRK2XTNT@     ""           WORK SPACE FOR "WRK2WORK"

WRK3DSN        WRK3WORK      DATASET NAME FOR "WRK3WORK"
WRK3UNIT@      @WORKUNIT@    OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK3WORK"
WRK3VOL@       @WORKVOL@    OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK3WORK"
WRK3XTNT@     ""           WORK SPACE FOR "WRK3WORK"

WRK4DSN        WRK4WORK      DATASET NAME FOR "WRK4WORK"
WRK4UNIT@      @WORKUNIT@    OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRK4WORK"
WRK4VOL@       @WORKVOL@    OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRK4WORK"
WRK4XTNT@     ""           WORK SPACE FOR "WRK4WORK"

WRKADSN        WRKAWORK      DATASET NAME FOR "WRKAWORK"
WRKAUNIT@      @WORKUNIT@    OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKAWORK"
WRKAVOL@       @WORKVOL@    OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKAWORK"
WRKAXTNT@     ""           WORK SPACE FOR "WRKAWORK"

WRKBDSN        WRKBWORK      DATASET NAME FOR "WRKBWORK"
WRKBUNIT@      @WORKUNIT@    OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKBWORK"
WRKBVOL@       @WORKVOL@    OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKBWORK"
WRKBTXTNT@    ""           WORK SPACE FOR "WRKBWORK"
```

WRKCDSN	WRKCWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKCUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKCVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKCXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKCWORK"
WRKDDSN	WRKDWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKDUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKDVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKDXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKDWORK"
WRKEDSN	WRKEWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKEUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKEVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKEXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKEWORK"
WRKFDSN	WRKFWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKFUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKFVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKFXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKFWORK"
WRKGDSN	WRKGWORK	DATASET NAME FOR "WRKGWORK"
WRKGUNIT	@WORKUNIT@	OVERRIDE WORKUNIT FOR "WRKGWORK"
WRKGVOL	@WORKVOL@	OVERRIDE WORKVOL FOR "WRKGWORK"
WRKGXTNT	" "	WORK SPACE FOR "WRKGWORK"

```
*****
*           SYSTEM SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ***
*           USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE   *
*           FILES AND AREAS THAT COMPRIZE THE SYSTEM    *
*           SEGMENT. THE FILES IN THE SYSTEM SEGMENT    *
*           DEFINE THE RUNTIME SYSTEM AS WELL AS THE     *
*           PHYSICAL DATABASE.                         *
*****
```

```
*****
*           SELECT          *
***      SYSTEM.DDLDML      ***
*           PARAMETERS       *
*****
```

DCDMLDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDML	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDML"
DCDMLASGN	DCDML	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCDML"
AUTHUSER	" "	AUTHORIZED USER ID FOR DICTIONARY SIGNON
AUTHUSERPW	" "	AUTHORIZED USER PASSWORD FOR DICT SIGNON

```

*****
*          SELECT      *
***      SYSTEM.DDLCLOD      ***
*          PARAMETERS      *
*****


DCLODDSN   SYSTEM.DDLCLOD DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLCLOD"
DCLODASGN   DCLOD           DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCLOD"

*****


*          SELECT      *
****    CATSYS SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ****
*          *
*          USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE  *
*          FILES AND AREAS THAT COMPRIZE THE CATSYS      *
*          SEGMENT. THIS SEGMENT IS REQUIRED FOR A       *
*          CA-IDMS/DB INSTALL.                          *
*          *
*****


*****
*          SELECT      *
***      CATSYS.DCCAT      ***
*          PARAMETERS      *
*****


DCCATDSN   CATSYS.DCCAT     DATASET NAME FOR "CATSYS.DCCAT"
DCCATASGN   DCCAT           DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCCAT"

*****


*          SELECT      *
***      CATSYS.DCCATLOD      ***
*          PARAMETERS      *
*****


DCCATLDSN   CATSYS.DCCATLOD DATASET NAME FOR "CATSYS.DCCATLOD"
DCCATLASGN   DCCATL          DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCCATL"

*****


*          SELECT      *
***      CATSYS.DCCATX      ***
*          PARAMETERS      *
*****


DCCATXDSN   CATSYS.DCCATX     DATASET NAME FOR "CATSYS.DCCATX"
DCCATXASGN   DCCATX          DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCCATX"

```

```
*****
*          *
***      SYSMSG SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:      ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE      *
*      THE SYSMSG.DDLDCMSG AREA. THE SYSMSG      *
*      SEGMENT WILL CONTAIN ALL THE RELEASE      *
*      15.0 MESSAGES. THIS SEGMENT IS REQUIRED      *
*      FOR A CA-IDMS/DB INSTALL.                  *
*          *
*****
```

```
*****
*          *
*      SELECT      *
***      SYSMSG.DDLDCMSG      ***
*          *
*      PARAMETERS      *
*****
```

DCMSGDSN	SYSMSG.DDLDCMSG DATASET NAME FOR "SYSMSG.DDLDCMSG"
DCMSGASGN	DCMSG DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "DCMSG"

```
*****
*          *
***      DEFAULT DICTIONARY PARAMETERS FOLLOW:  ****
*          *
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO SPECIFY      *
*      THE FILES THAT COMprise THE DEFAULT      *
*      DICTIONARY. THIS IS THE SEGMENT WHERE      *
*      WHERE SCHEMAS, SUBSCHEMAS, WORK RECORDS,      *
*      AND APPLICATION DEFINITIONS ARE STORED.      *
*          *
*****
```

DDICTNAME	SYSTEM DBNAME FOR DEFAULT DICTIONARY
DDICTASGN	DCDML DDNAME FOR DEFAULT DICTIONARY DDLDML
DDICTDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDML DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDML"
DDLODASGN	DCLOD DDNAME FOR DEFAULT DICTIONARY DDLDCLOD
DDLODDSN	SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD DATASET NAME FOR "SYSTEM.DDLDCLOD"

```
*****
*                                     *
****  TOOLDICT SEGMENT PARAMETERS FOLLOW:  ****
*                                     *
*   USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE THE  *
*   FILES THAT COMPRIZE THE TOOLDICT SEGMENT.    *
*   THIS SEGEMENT IS THE CA-IDMS/TOOLS          *
*   DICTIONARY WHERE THE SCHEMAS, SUBSCHEMAS,   *
*   MAPS, DIALOGS, WORK RECORDS, APPLICATIONS,  *
*   AND TUTORIAL MODULES REQUIRED FOR THOSE      *
*   PRODUCTS ARE INSTALLED.                     *
*                                     *
*****
```

NEW-TDICT YES ALLOCATE TOOLDICT SEGMENT (YES/NO)

```
*****
*                                     *
**** PAGE RANGE CHART               *
*                                     *
*   USE THIS CHART AS AN AID IF YOU NEED TO INCREASE  *
*   THE NUMBER OF PAGES FOR ANY AREA. IT IS YOUR        *
*   RESPONSIBILITY TO MAKE ALL THE CHANGES NECESSARY TO  *
*   ENSURE THAT PAGE RANGES DO NOT OVERLAP.             *
*-----*
*                                     *
*   FILE      | LOPAGE | HIPAGE | PAGES |
*****
```

FILE	LOPAGE	HIPAGE	PAGES
TDICTDB	95001	97000	2000
TDLODDB	98001	98100	100

```
*****
*                                     *
*   SELECT                         *
***  TOOLDICT.DDLDML   ***
*   PARAMETERS                      *
*****
```

TDICTNAME	TOOLDICT	DBNAME FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
TDICTASGN	TDICTDB	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "TDICTDB"
TDICTDSN	TOOLDICT.DDLDML	DATASET NAME FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
TDICTUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
TDICTVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
TDICTXTNT	6000,100	DISK SPACE FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDML"
TDICTPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "TDICTDB"
TDICTDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "TDICTDB"
TDICTPAGS	2000	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "TDICTDB"
TDICTLPG	95001	STARTING PAGE OF "TOOLDICT.DDLDML" AREA

```
*****
*          SELECT      *
***     TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD   ***
*          PARAMETERS    *
*****
```

TDLODASGN	TDLODDB	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "TDLODDB"
TDLODDSN	TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD	DATASET NAME FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
TDLODUNIT	@DISKUNIT@	OVERRIDE DISKUNIT FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
TDLODVOL	@DISKVOL@	OVERRIDE DISKVOL FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
TDLODXTNT	600,10	DISK SPACE FOR "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD"
TDLODPGSZ	4096	PAGESIZE FOR AREA(S) IN "TDLODDB"
TDLODDEV	@DISKACCM@	FILE ACCESS METHOD FOR "TDLODDB"
TDLODPAGS	100	NUMBER OF PAGES (BLOCKS) IN "TDLODDB"
TDLODLOGP	98001	STARTING PAGE OF "TOOLDICT.DDLDCLOD" AREA

```
*****
*          *
***     DISK AND TAPE JOURNAL PARAMETERS   ***
*          *
*     USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO SPECIFY  *
*     THE SYSTEM TAPE AND DISK JOURNALS.        *
*          *
*****
```

TJRNASGN	SYSJRNL	DD NAME FOR "TAPEJRNL"
J1ASGN	J1JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J1JRNL"
J2ASGN	J2JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J2JRNL"
J3ASGN	J3JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J3JRNL"
J4ASGN	J4JRNL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "J4JRNL"


```
*****
*          *
***     SYSCTL FILE ALLOCATION PARAMETERS   ***
*          *
*     USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO DEFINE  *
*     AND ALLOCATE A SYSCTL FILE.               *
*          *
*****
```

CVMODE	YES	RUN DBTABLE, DMCL AND SYSGEN UNDER CV (YES/NO)
SYSCTLASGN	SYSCTL	DEFAULT DDNAME FOR "SYSCTL" FILE
SYSCTLDSN	SYSCTL	DATASET NAME FOR "SYSCTL" FILE

```
*****
*          JOB AND RESTART PARAMETERS      ****
*
*      USE THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS TO SPECIFY      *
*      WHICH INSTALL JOBS YOU WILL BE RUNNING.      *
*      CODING "YES" OR A JOBNOME FOR ANY OF THE    *
*      "JOB" PARAMETERS WILL CAUSE JCL TO BE        *
*      GENERATED.                                     *
*
*****
```

RESTART	" "	RESTART GENERATED JOB WITH "JOBSTAGE"
JOB1	NO	JOB 1 DOES DATASET ALLOCATION
J1JOB1	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB1	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JALLOC	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE ALLOCATES LIBRARIES AND DB FILES
J1JALLOC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JALLOC	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB2	NO	JOB 2 OFFLOADS MODULES INTO INDIRECT LIBRARIES
J1JOB2	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB2	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JLNKIPDS	DEFAULT	THIS STEP LINKS CDMSIPDS AND CDMSIJMP FROM TAPE
J1JLNKIPDS	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JLNKIPDS	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JAPALIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP OFFLOADS APARS FROM TAPE TO INDTAPA
J1JAPALIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JAPALIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOBJLIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP OFFLOADS MODULES FROM TAPE TO INDTLOAD
J1JOBJLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOBJLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JSRCLIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP OFFLOADS MODULES FROM TAPE TO INDTSRC
J1JSRCLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JSRCLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JLODLIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP OFFLOADS MODULES FROM TAPE TO DISK
J1JLODLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JLODLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JLNKLIB	DEFAULT	THIS STEP OFFLOADS LINK MEMBERS FROM TAPE TO DISK
J1JLNKLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JLNKLIB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JDNLDSPG	DEFAULT	THIS STEP OFFLOAD SASO SPG TEXT FROM TAPE TO DISK
J1JDNLDSPG	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JDNLDSPG	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

JOB3	NO	JOB 3 PERFORMS CUSTOMIZED ASSEMBLES
J1JOB3	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB3	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMIVPRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES GENERAL DBIO MODULE GSDTPARM
J1ASMIVPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMIVPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMKPPRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES GENERAL SORT MODULE TPSPARM
J1ASMKPPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMKPPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMO5PRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES ADS-ALIVE MODULE USGTPARM
J1ASMO5PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMO5PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMOTPRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES DBX MODULE USVTPARM
J1ASMOTPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMOTPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMMVPRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES DICT MIGRATOR MODULE USMTPARM
J1ASMMVPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMMVPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMMUPRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES DMA MODULE XDMTPARM
J1ASMMUPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMMUPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMM3PRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES DME MODULE USETPARM
J1ASMM3PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMM3PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMM4PRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES DQF MODULE DADTPARM
J1ASMM4PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMM4PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMKJPRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES DML-ONLINE MODULE USDTPARM
J1ASMKJPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMKJPRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMO3PRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES ENFORCER MODULE ESXTPARM
J1ASMO3PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMO3PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMF8PRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES MASTERKEY MODULE SSKTPARM
J1ASMF8PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMF8PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMF9PRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES LOG DISPLAY MODULE USKTPARM
J1ASMF9PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMF9PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

ASMO4PRM	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES SASO MODULE ESSTPARM
J1ASMO4PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMO4PRM	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 JOB4	NO	JOB 4 WILL DO THE SMP/E "RECEIVE"
J1JOB4	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB4	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 RECEIVE	DEFAULT	THIS STEP PERFORMS THE SMP/E RECEIVE OF SYSMODS
J1RECEIVE	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2RECEIVE	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 JOB5	NO	JOB 5 WILL DO THE FIRST SMP/E "APPLY"
J1JOB5	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB5	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 APPLY	DEFAULT	THIS STEP PERFORMS FIRST SMP/E APPLY PROCESSING
J1APPLY	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2APPLY	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 JOB6	NO	JOB 6 BUILDS THE IDMS RUNTIME ENVIRONMENT
J1JOB6	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB6	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 UPDDMCL	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE UPDATES THE GLBLDMCL
J1UPDDMCL	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2UPDDMCL	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 UPDBBTB	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE UPDATES THE DBNAME TABLE
J1UPDBBTB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2UPDBBTB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 TOOLDICT	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE CREATES THE CA-IDMS/TOOLS DICT
J1TOOLDICT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2TOOLDICT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 LOADDML	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE LOADS THE TUTORIALS AND SYSGENS
J1LOADDML	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2LOADDML	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 DBXDB	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE DBX DATABASE
J1DBXDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2DBXDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 DMADB	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE DMA DATABASE
J1DMADB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2DMADB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
 DMLDB	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE DML0 DATABASE
J1DMLDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2DMLDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

ENFRDB	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS AND LOADS ENFORCER DATABASE
J1ENFRDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ENFRDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
MKEYDB	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS THE MASTERKEY DATABASE
J1MKEYDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2MKEYDB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
SASODB	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE BUILDS AND LOADS THE SASO DATABASE
J1SASODB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2SASODB	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
DCSRLNK	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE LINKS DC-SORT FOR CICS
J1DCSRLNK	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2DCSRLNK	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ENFRLNK	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE LINKS IDMS UTILITIES WITH ENFORCER
J1ENFRLNK	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ENFRLNK	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
BS2KLNK	DEFAULT	THIS JOBSTAGE WILL DO THE CUSTOMER LINKS
J1BS2KLNK	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2BS2KLNK	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB7	NO	JOB 7 WILL DO THE INSTALL USER EXITS
J1JOB7	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB7	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMO6XIT	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES TASKA USFUEXTX
J1ASMO6XIT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMO6XIT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ASMUXIT	DEFAULT	THIS STEP ASSEMBLES RHDCUXIT
J1ASMUXIT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ASMUXIT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
JOB8	NO	JOB 8 WILL DO THE SMP/E "ACCEPT"
J1JOB8	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2JOB8	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2
ACCEPT	DEFAULT	THIS STEP PERFORMS SMP/E ACCEPT PROCESSING
J1ACCEPT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD1
J2ACCEPT	DEFAULT	OS JOBCARD2

*		*
*	WORK FIELD PARAMETERS - DO NOT USE	*
*		*

BS2K	NO	OPERATING SYSTEM BS2000
BS2KJOBNAME	JOBNAME	CURRENT JOB/WORKFIELD
MAXPAGSZ	" "	WORK FIELD: MAXIMUM PAGE SIZE FOR GLBLDMCL
*	" "	COMMENT WORK FIELD
PREFVOL	F0WI1B	PREFIX OF TAPECUT FILES

Appendix E. Messages and Codes

E.1	Overview	E-3
E.2	Installation Job Return Codes	E-4
E.2.1	CAIJMP Messages	E-4
E.2.2	CAIJMP Return Codes	E-4
E.2.3	CAIPDS Messages	E-4
E.2.4	CAIPDS Return Codes	E-4

E.1 Overview

This appendix lists the possible installation job step messages and return codes.

Topics include:

- CAIJMP messages
- CAIJMP return codes
- CAIPDS messages
- CAIPDS return codes

E.2 Installation Job Return Codes

The expected installation job step return codes are listed as a comment immediately after the execute statement of each job step. Please review the expected return codes as you proceed with the installation. Any deviation from the expected return codes should be brought to the attention of Computer Associates technical support.

E.2.1 CAIIJMP Messages

The CAIIJMP program produces tailored installation JCL based on input parameters specified for the installation. Additionally, CAIIJMP diagnoses errors and inconsistencies in the CAIIJMP input parameters, terminates processing and returns a code to indicate the severity of the errors found. These return codes correspond to step completion codes and can be tested using a job variable.

E.2.2 CAIIJMP Return Codes

- 0 indicates normal completion.
- 4 indicates that warning messages have been issued. Review the output listing before proceeding.
- 8 indicates that error messages have been issued. The punching of the customized JCL has been suppressed. Review the error message text in the output listing to determine the problem.
- 16 or 20 indicates that a severe error has been encountered. CAIIJMP has terminated processing. Often, the problem is a JCL error which leads to an I/O error or a failure to open a data set. Review the output listing to determine the problem.

E.2.3 CAIIPDS Messages

The CAIIPDS program offloads selected modules from the installation tape into the libraries. The CAIIPDS program is executed during Job 2 of the installation process to load the libraries. The JCL to execute CAIIPDS and the required input parameters are generated by the CAIIJMP program. Several error conditions can occur during the execution of CAIIPDS. These errors are indicated by return codes set in register 15 upon completion of the program. These return codes correspond to step completion codes and are reported on the BS2000 SYSOUT file.

E.2.4 CAIIPDS Return Codes

- 0 indicates normal completion.
- 8 indicates that error messages have been issued. Review the error message text in the output listing to determine the error.

- 12 indicates a password error. Review the product passwords supplied by Computer Associates for the products which you are installing. Confirm that all passwords are coded correctly.
- 16 indicates a parameter error. Contact Computer Associates technical support for assistance.
- 20 indicates an internal tape format error. Contact Computer Associates technical support for assistance.
- 3x indicates an I/O error on SYSIPT.
- 4x indicates an I/O error on SYSLST.
- 5x indicates an I/O error on SYSOPT.
- 6x indicates an I/O error on SYS001.

Appendix F. CA-IDMS Tools Runtime Options

F.1 Overview	F-3
F.2 CA-IDMS/ADS Alive Runtime Parameters	F-4
F.3 CA-IDMS/Database Extractor Runtime Parameters	F-6
F.4 CA-IDMS/DBIO Runtime Parameters	F-8
F.5 CA-IDMS/DC SORT Runtime Parameters	F-10
F.6 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Runtime Parameters	F-11
F.7 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Assistant Runtime Parameters	F-28
F.8 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor Runtime Parameters	F-29
F.9 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Query Facility	F-31
F.10 CA-IDMS/DML Online Runtime Parameters	F-32
F.11 CA-IDMS/Enforcer Runtime Parameters	F-44
F.12 CA-IDMS/Masterkey Runtime Parameters	F-46
F.13 CA-IDMS/Online Log Display	F-47
F.14 CA-IDMS/SASO Runtime Parameters	F-48

F.1 Overview

This appendix describes the CA-IDMS Tools runtime parameters. These parameters are supplied with default values and can be modified at installation by changing the CAIJMP JCL member.

Note: The installation procedure defines, initializes, and loads a dictionary (tooldict) with various product modules. This is the dictionary that is referred to by the HLPDICT and HLPNODE parameters that appear in most of the xxxTPARM modules.

These runtime parameters can also be modified after initial installation by executing the function xxxTPARM with the DBMSMOD procedure.

Enter the following command:

```
/CALL &dbasrc(DBMSMOD),xxxTPARM
```

In EDT mode, you can modify the assembler source.

Pressing K1 (or Halt) saves the assembler source and then re-assembles and relinks the module.

Pressing K2 does not save the assembly source and the procedure is terminated.

CA-IDMS/TOOL	xxxTPARM source
CA-IDMS/ADS Alive	USGTPARM
CA-IDMS/Database Extractor (DBX)	USVTPARM
CA-IDMS/DBIO	GSDTPARM
CA-IDMS/DC SORT	TPSPARM
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator	USMTPARM
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Assistant	XDMTPARM
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor	USETPARM
CA-IDMS/Dictionary Query Facility	DADTPARM
CA-IDMS/DML Online (DMLO)	USDTPARM
CA-IDMS/Enforcer	ESXTPARM
CA-IDMS/Masterkey	SSKTPARM
CA-IDMS/Online Log Display	USKTPARM
CA-IDMS/SASO	ESSTPARM

F.2 CA-IDMS/ADS Alive Runtime Parameters

```
*-----*
* CA-IDMS/ADS-ALIVE RUNTIME PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*
* USGTPARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR USG *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*USGTPARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the *
*          USG system to provide run-time values. *
*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES *
*-----*
*          USGTSK=(1-8 CHAR)    Task used to invoke USG *
*          HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate dictionary used for *
*                                GSIHELP *
*          HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate node used for GSIHELP *
*          HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number of HELP modules. *
*          PCHOFF=INTEGER      Offset for implant *
*          SWEEP=(Y OR N)       Y(yes) or N(no) - area sweep for *
*                                dialog wild cards *
*          AUTO=(Y OR N)        Y(yes) or N(no) - non-interrupt *
*                                mode allowed *
*          QKEEP=INTEGER        Number of days to retain *
*                                debugqueue records *
*          PROKEEP=INTEGER     Number of days to retain *
*                                ADSALIVE profile queue records *
*                                must be numeric integer *
*                                between 0 and 255 *
*          DICTDEF=(D OR P)     D = Dictname will be from *
*                                default dictname *
*                                P = Dictname will be from *
*                                profile. *
*                                (default = P) *
*          NOTE: First time will always *
*          come from default dictname *
```

```
*  
* For example : *  
*      USGCPARM USGTSK=ADSALIVE, *  
*                  HLPDICT=, *  
*                  HLPNODE=, *  
*                  HLPVERS=1, *  
*                  PCHOFF=3800, *  
*                  SWEET=Y, *  
*                  AUTO=Y, *  
*                  QKEEP=3, *  
*                  PROKEEP=255, *  
*                  DICTDEF=P *  
*-----*
```

F.3 CA-IDMS/Database Extractor Runtime Parameters

```
-----*  
* CA-IDMS/DATABASE EXTRACTOR RUNTIME PARAMETERS *  
*-----*  
* *-----*  
*      MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *  
*-----*  
*USVTARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the *  
*          DBX system to provide run-time values. *  
*-----*  
*      RUN-TIME VARIABLES *  
*-----*  
*      TASK=(1-8 CHAR)      Task used to invoke DBX. *  
*-----*  
*      HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Dictname of dictionary into which *  
*                          USVTUTOR modules were added. *  
*                          Null for default dictionary. *  
*-----*  
*      HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Dictnode for "hlpdict" *  
*-----*  
*      HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number at which USVTUTOR *  
*                          modules were added: *  
*                          must be 1 - 9999. *  
*-----*  
*      STKENTS=INTEGER       # of 8 byte entries to allocate *  
*                          for DBX set stack: *  
*                          must be 30 - 1000. *  
*                          The number of sets that will be *  
*                          traversed in your extract path *  
*                          beginning at the database entry *  
*                          point. A safe number would be one *  
*                          for each set in your subschema. *  
*                          For example : 200 is a suitable *  
*                          value for IDMSNWKA. *
```

```

*      COPY=(1-8 CHAR)      Who a user can copy other jcl      *
*                           members and specifications from :  *
*                           'USER' ----- from only him/herself;  *
*                           'DBXADMIN' - from him/herself plus any  *
*                           global members under the          *
*                           'DBXADMIN' user-id;           *
*                           'ANYONE' --- from anyone on the DBX   *
*                           database.                         *
*
*      RETSEQ=Y|YES|N|NO    Default 'retain physical sequence  *
*                           of member records in the set?'    *
*                           value on the record level        *
*                           selection criteria screen.       *
*
*      XRECURO=Y|YES|N|NO    Default 'extract all owners for  *
*                           extracted recursive records?'  *
*                           value on the record level        *
*                           selection criteria screen.       *
*
*      BGINMID=Y|YES|N|NO    Default 'begin viewing/editing     *
*                           in the middle of a path        *
*                           definition' value on the specify  *
*                           database extract specification  *
*                           screen.                         *
*
*
*      NLYZ008=W|WARNING|  Have message NLYZ008 as a warning      *
*                           E|ERROR             or error message.        *
*                           NLYZ008 is displayed as extract      *
*                           time when a mandatory member is    *
*                           being extracted without its owner.  *
*                           An error message prevents the      *
*                           specification from being used.       *
*
*
*      For example :          *
*      USVCPARM TASK=DBX,      *
*                          HLPDICT=,      NULL      *
*                          HLPNODE=,      NULL      *
*                          HLPVERS=1,      *
*                          STKENTS=50,      *
*                          COPY=ANYONE,      *
*                          RETSEQ=YES,      *
*                          XRECURO=YES,      *
*                          BGINMID=NO,      *
*                          NLYZ008=WARNING
*-----*
```

F.4 CA-IDMS/DBIO Runtime Parameters

```
-----*
* CA-IDMS/DBIO RUNTIME PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*GSDTPARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the *
* DBIO system to provide run-time values. *
*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES *
*-----*
*          SIZEVAL=(1-8 CHAR)    Indicates how data is to be read *
*                           when using EXCP processing and      *
*                           specifies the type of buffers for   *
*                           the MAXBUF and DEFBUF keywords : *
*                           'CYL' -- read cylinders; *
*                           'TRK' -- read tracks; *
*                           'BLK' -- read blocks. *
*
*          MAXBUF=(1-1000000 NUM) *
*                           Maximum buffers per read. *
*
*          DEFBUF=(1-1000000 NUM) *
*                           Average buffers per read. *
*
*----- The following keywords control whether or not to *
* snap information in gsdidio; snaps will be written *
* to a SNAPIO DD in OS and SYSLST in DOS: *
*
*          SNAPENT=YES|NO      Upon entering GSDIDIO *
*
*          SNAPXIT=YES|NO     Prior to exiting GSDIDIO *
*
*          SNAPOPN=YES|NO     Prior to opening a file *
*
*          SNAPCLS=YES|NO     Prior to closing a file *
*
*          SNAPFS=YES|NO      Fastscan processing *
*
*          SNAPXCP=YES|NO     EXCP processing *
*
*          SNAPPRQ=YES|NO     Page request *
*
*          SNAPERR=YES|NO     Upon any non-zero minor error- *
*                           status *
*
```

```
*          - - - - - Additional debug keywords      *
*          TRACE=YES|NO           Save routine names in trace table  *
*          DEBUG=YES|NO          Display debug information   *
*          *
*          * For example :          *
*          GSDCPARM SIZEVAL=CYL,      *
*                      MAXBUF=2,      *
*                      DEFBUF=1,      *
*                      SNAPENT=NO,    *
*                      SNAPXIT=NO,    *
*                      SNAPOPEN=NO,   *
*                      SNAPCLS=NO,    *
*                      SNAPFS=NO,     *
*                      SNAPXCP=NO,   *
*                      SNAPPQ=NO,     *
*                      SNAPERR=NO,   *
*                      TRACE=NO,      *
*                      DEBUG=NO      *
*-----*
```

F.5 CA-IDMS/DC SORT Runtime Parameters

```
-----*
* CA-IDMS/DC-SORT RUNTIME PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*
* TPSPARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR TP/SORT *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*TPSCPARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the *
*          TP/SORT system to provide run-time values. *
*          With the TP/SORT facility you can provide run-time *
*          storage limits and algorithms necessary to distribute *
*          the sort work records into the sorted output. *
*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES *
*-----*
*          MAIN=(0 THRU N)      Amount of main storage used for *
*                               internal sort buffers. *
*                               Zero is an all-scratch sort. *
*
*          AUX=(0 THRU N)       Maximum amount of scratch storage *
*                               used by CA-IDMS/DC SORT. *
*
*          MINRBUF=(0-N)        Minimum desirable number of *
*                               records in a sort buffer. *
*
*          LIMLOCK=(Y OR N)     (Y)es or (N)o prevent individual *
*                               programs from exceeding *
*                               installation limits. *
*
*          EXIT=(PA1..PF24)    ADS preprocessor exit. *
*                               Default key is PA2. *
*
*Each of the supplied values must be an integer constant. *
*The number represents the actual number of bytes. *
*    10000      = 10,000 bytes *
*    100000     = 100,000 bytes *
*
*This places a responsibility upon the installer to keep it within *
*reason. *
*
* For example : *
*    TPSCPARM MAIN=10000,AUX=10000,MINRBUF=100,LIMLOCK=N, *
*                EXITKEY=PA2 *
*-----*
```

F.6 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Runtime Parameters

```
-----  
* CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR RUNTIME PARAMETERS  
-----  
*  
* DICTIONARY MIGRATOR  
* RELEASE 14.1  
* Product Customization Instructions  
*  
* The following instructions explain what customization options are *  
* available for Dictionary Migrator and how to implement any option *  
* chosen.  
*  
* NOTE: These customization options are not required for *  
* the proper execution of Dictionary Migrator. If the module *  
* provided on the installation tape or all default values *  
* are used, Dictionary Migrator will execute a correct migration for*  
* the entity(s) named in the parameter statements.  
* These options are provided for users whose shop standards mandate *  
* some deviation from the basic migration strategy.  
*  
*  
* GENERAL:  
*  
* The customization options for Dictionary Migrator are found in *  
* this module. A version of this module with all default values *  
* specified is provided in load module form in the installation. In*  
* this member, each option is listed with its default value. To *  
* change an option, change the value of the relevant parameter and *  
* reassemble and relink this module. The only valid values for any *  
* parameter in USMTPARM are listed in this supplement; any other *  
* value will result in a level 8 error during assembly.  
*  
*  
* Assembly and Linkage:  
*  
* Any level of IBM assembler and linkage editor can be used to *  
* create the USMTPARM module. Only the following modifications *  
* need to be made:  
*  
* 1. MACLIB of the Assembler step: Add the DBMS.SRCLIB from *  
* installation to the files named in MACLIB.  
* 2. SYSLMOD of the Link edit step: Use same DBMS.LOADLIB that is *  
* defined in the installation as the library from which DBMS *  
* products will be executed.  
* 3. Name of the module is USMTPARM.  
*
```

```
* A note on numbering in these instructions: *
*
* The numbers which precede the options listed in these instructions*
* can also be used as the offset to the relevant byte within the   *
* load module. This is useful when verifying which options are    *
* in effect. *
*
* When an option has no number preceding it, the option does not   *
* affect a single byte, but rather affects the values of several   *
* bytes. XUDNREF and XUDNXRT are the primary occurrences of such   *
* "group" options. *
*
* Individual Options *
*
* 1. XPICOVR (Exclude Picture Overrides)
* - Purpose: Produce ADD RECORD syntax without PICTURE OVERRIDE   *
* clauses for RECORD ELEMENTS.
* - Default: RECORD syntax is created including PICTURE OVERRIDE   *
* clauses for all RECORD ELEMENTS.
* - To invoke this option, code: XPICOVR=Y
* - To use the default, code: XPICOVR=N
* - Comments: Picture overrides are needed for correct migration   *
* any time that the element picture and the picture as used in   *
* the record are not identical. Using the default value insures   *
* that the record added to the object dictionary will be          *
* identical to the source dictionary without an added step of   *
* manual verification.
*
*
*
* 2. XSUBEL (Exclude Subordinate elements)
* - Purpose: Produce ADD RECORD syntax without SUBORDINATE ELEMENT*
* IS clause.
* - Default: RECORD syntax is created including SUBORDINATE      *
* ELEMENTS clauses for all RECORD ELEMENTS.
* - To invoke this option, code: EXSUBEL=Y
* - To use the default, code: EXSUBEL=N
* - Comments: The subordinate element clause provides more       *
* complete documentation of the structure of the record and      *
* also verifies that group elements definitions are identical   *
* to the use of the group element within the record.
*
*
*
```

```
*          *
*          *
* 3. MAPDCMP  (Map Decompile)          *
* - Purpose: Use the Batch Mapping Facility option          *
*   PROCESS=DECOMPILE when producing Map (RHDCUPD) syntax.          *
* - Default: Map syntax is created using the PROCESS=TERSE unless*          *
* either 1) NEWVERSION or 2) CHANGEONLY and RUN=AUDIT are          *
* elected, in which case PROCESS=DECOMPILE is automatically          *
* used.          *
* - To invoke this option, code: MAPDCMP=Y          *
* - To use the default, code: MAPDCMP=N          *
* - Comments: PROCESS=TERSE produces map syntax which is very          *
* much more concise than PROCESS=DECOMPILE. Normally, that          *
* option should be used. However, PROCESS=TERSE omits all          *
* parameters where the value is the default; thus errors may be *          *
* introduced when migrating between unlike environments.          *
* Likewise, migration between different release levels of          *
* IDMS may be unpredictable using PROCESS=TERSE.          *
* Migration to CA-IDMS/PC requires that this option be set          *
* to Y (yes).          *
*          *
*          *
* 4. SHARRDY  (Ready in Shared update)          *
* 5. EXCLRDY  (Ready in Exclusive update)          *
* - Purpose: Define the usage mode to be used in the upload steps*          *
* of Dictionary Migrator.          *
* - Default: Dictionary areas are readied in protected update.          *
* - SHARRDY and EXCLRDY are mutually exclusive; at most, only one*          *
* can be coded as 'Y'.          *
* - To ready in Protected Update (default): SHARRDY=N,EXCLRDY=N          *
* - To ready in Shared Update: SHARRDY=Y,EXCLRDY=N          *
* - To ready in Exclusive Update: SHARRDY=Y,EXCLRDY=N          *
*          *
* - Comments: Refer to CA/IDMS Programmers Guide for an overview*          *
* of usage modes.          *
* Because migration usually involves updates to a large number*          *
* of dictionary records, protected update is recommended.          *
*          *
* 6. DFLTOFF  (Default is OFF)          *
* - Purpose: Set Options for Sessions for the upload steps*          *
* of Dictionary Migrator to 'DEFAULT IS OFF.'          *
* - Default: 'DEFAULT IS ON' is used.          *
* - To invoke this option, code: DFLTOFF=Y          *
* - To use the default, code: DFLTOFF=N          *
* - Comments: This option affects the disposition of ADD          *
* statements during the upload steps. When the default is used,*          *
* if an ADD statement is encountered for an entity occurrence*          *
* already in the dictionary, ADD will be changed to a MODIFY.          *
* With the option DFLTOFF=Y, the ADD will be treated as an*          *
* error, and no update will occur.          *
* - Note: DEFAULT IS OFF is always used for records as the ADD          *
* RECORD syntax is not compatible with the MODIFY command.          *
*          *
```

- * 7. PROGALL (Display program with all)
 - Purpose: Create DDDLPGM statements in which program entities are displayed with all relationships.
 - Default: Programs are displayed with a limited range of relationships.
 - To invoke this option, code: PROGALL=Y
 - To use the default, code: PROGALL=N
 - Comments: In an ADSO environment, the DDDLPGM program statements are primarily for documentational entries. The ADSOBGN step established a majority of the program's relationships and they need not be repeated in this step.

- * In other environments, this option can be useful in
* eliminating the need to rerun the IDMSDMLX preprocessor to
* reestablish program statistics.

- * 8. XCLIST (Omit Clist creation)
 - Purpose: Eliminate the creation of the DCMT VARY NEW COPY Clist.
 - Default: The Clist is created.
 - To invoke this option, code: XCLIST=Y
 - To use the default, code: XCLIST=N
 - Comments: The Clist feature of Dictionary Migrator is a very convenient method of immediately implementing a migrated change. In some environments, however, changes are not scheduled to take effect until the system is recycled. In such cases, the Clist is not needed and can be omitted.

```
* The next 3 parameters all make modifications to the standard      *
*     clist format of "DCMT VARY PROGRAM program-name N C I".      *
*      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *
*      *      9. XCLIMM      (Omit Immediate option from Clist syntax)  *
*      - Purpose: Create the Clist syntax without Immediate option.   *
*      - Default: The Clist is created with complete syntax.        *
*      - To invoke this option, code: XCLIMM=Y                      *
*      - To use the default, code: XCLIMM=N                      *
*      - To use QUIESCE rather than IMMEDIATE, code: XCLIMM=Q        *
*      - Comments: The Immediate option in VARY NEW COPY causes the  *
*      updated load module to be loaded immediately after execution  *
*      of the command. If an application is in use at this time,    *
*      some unexpected results may occur, including abnormal       *
*      termination of users' sessions.                            *
*      Omitting the immediate parameter will                   *
*      cause the update load module to be loaded at the first     *
*      opportunity when no one is using the module.             *
*      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *
*      *      The Quiesce option formats the VARY PRO ... N C QUIESCE. In  *
*      this case activity using the program named will be quiesced.  *
*      When no one is left using the program, a new copy           *
*      will be loaded.                                         *
*      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *
*      *      10. XCLDBN      (Omit Dictname from Clist syntax)      *
*      - Purpose: Create the Clist syntax without Dictname entry    *
*      - Default: The Clist is created with complete syntax        *
*      - To invoke this option, code: XCLDBN=Y                      *
*      - To use the default, code: XCLDBN=N                      *
*      - Comments: The Dictname entry in the Clist is the one named as*
*      object dictionary in the Dictionary Migrator run. Hence, it  *
*      is also the dictionary into which the changed load modules   *
*      were moved or generated. Omitting this parameter allows      *
*      another set of load modules to be new copied, or the use of   *
*      the DCUF command to control the Dictname used.            *
*      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *      *
```

```

*
* 11. XCLVER      (Omit Version from Clist syntax) *
* - Purpose: Create the Clist syntax without Version entry *
* - Default: The Clist is created with complete syntax   *
* - To invoke this option, code: XCLVER=Y                 *
* - To use the default, code: XCLVER=N                 *
* - Comments: The version entry in the Clist is the specific *
* version of the load module moved or generated in the object   *
* dictionary. It is not recommended to change the value of the   *
* option.                                              *
**
* 12. NOUDC       (Exclude User Defined Comments)    *
* - Purpose: Create DDDLUPD and DDDLPGM file syntax without any   *
* user defined comments.                                     *
* - Default: The syntax is created including any user defined   *
* comment text that is present in the source dictionary.        *
* - To invoke this option, code: NOUDC=Y                  *
* - To use the default, code: NOUDC=N                  *
* - Comments: User Defined Comments are comments with headers   *
* other than those defined in the IDD as delivered. This option* *
* creates upload syntax which does not include this           *
* category of comments. Refer to Technical Bulletin          *
* UM-9002-0004 for additional information regarding the       *
* successful migration of user defined comments.             *
* EJECT                                                 *
*
* XUDNREF     (Exclude All User Defined Nest References)  *
*
* - Purpose: Create upload syntax without any references to   *
* user defined nests.                                     *
* - Default: The syntax is created including all references to   *
* user defined nests which are present.                   *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNREF=Y                *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNREF=N                *
* - Comments:                                         *
*   This option serves as a group election for all of the options  *
*   related to including references to User Defined Nests in the   *
*   syntax created.                                         *
*   If this option is 'Y' all of the flags beginning XUDNR   *
*   are set to 'Y'. It is not possible to override this option on* *
*   an individual entity basis. If user defined nests references * *
*   are desired for some entity types, but not others, code   *
*   XUDNREF=N and code 'Y' for the particular entity types   *
*   desired.                                              *
*

```

```
*      User defined nests are normally documentational entries which *
*      are not needed for an executable dialog or application.      *
*      Some users wish to eliminate such entries when migrating.   *
*      Review the options taken for the extraction of user defined *
*      nests (XUDNXRT and associated parameters). If user defined *
*      nest for an entity type are excluded from extraction, then   *
*      refer to Technical Bulletin UM-9002-0003 for additional      *
*      information regarding the successful migration of user defined*
*      comments.                                                 *
*                                                               *
*                                                               *
*                                                               *
*      13. XUDNREL  (Exclude User Defined Nest References for elements) *
*      - Purpose: Create upload syntax without references to          *
*      user defined nests for elements.                                *
*      - Default: The syntax is created including references to user  *
*      defined nests for elements.                                    *
*      - To invoke this option, code: XUDNREL=Y                     *
*      - To use the default, code: XUDNREL=N                     *
*      - Comments: See comments under XUDNREF.                      *
*                                                               *
*                                                               *
*                                                               *
*      14. XUDNRAT  (Exclude User Defined Nest References for Attributes)*
*      - Purpose: Create upload syntax without references to          *
*      user defined nests for Attributes.                            *
*      - Default: The syntax is created including references to user  *
*      defined nests for Attributes.                               *
*      - To invoke this option, code: XUDNRAT=Y                     *
*      - To use the default, code: XUDNRAT=N                     *
*      - Comments: See comments under XUDNREF.                      *
*      EJECT
*                                                               *
*      15. XUDNRSY  (Exclude User Defined Nest References for Systems) *
*      - Purpose: Create upload syntax without references to          *
*      user defined nests for Systems.                             *
*      - Default: The syntax is created including references to user  *
*      defined nests for Systems.                                *
*      - To invoke this option, code: XUDNRSY=Y                     *
*      - To use the default, code: XUDNRSY=N                     *
*      - Comments: See comments under XUDNREF.                      *
*                                                               *
*                                                               *
```

```
*          *
* 16. XUDNRRC  (Exclude User Defined Nest References for Records) *
* - Purpose: Create upload syntax without references to             *
* user defined nests for records.                                     *
* - Default: The syntax is created including references to user    *
* defined nests for records                                         *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNRRC=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNRRC=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNREF.                           *
*
*
*
* 17. XUDNRMD  (Exclude User Defined Nest References for modules) *
* - Purpose: Create upload syntax without references to             *
* user defined nests for modules.                                    *
* - Default: The syntax is created including references to user   *
* defined nests for modules                                         *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNRMD=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNRMD=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNREF.                           *
*
*
*
* 18. XUDNRPG  (Exclude User Defined Nest References for programs) *
* - Purpose: Create upload syntax without references to            *
* user defined nests for programs.                                   *
* - Default: The syntax is created including references to user  *
* defined nests for programs                                         *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNRPG=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNRPG=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNREF.                           *
*
*
*
* 19. XUDNRUS  (Exclude User Defined Nest References for users)  *
* - Purpose: Create upload syntax without references to           *
* user defined nests for users.                                    *
* - Default: The syntax is created including references to user *
* defined nests for users                                         *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNRUS=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNRUS=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNREF.                           *
EJECT
```

```
* 20. DBQUOTE  (Double Quote) *
* - Purpose: Use a double quote ("") throughout IDD syntax. *
* - Default: A single quote ('') is used for all IDD syntax. *
* - To invoke this option, code: DBQUOTE=Y *
* - To use the default, code: DBQUOTE=N *
* - Comments: This option should be used at sites where the *
* dictionary standard is a double quote. *
*
*
*
*
* 21. EXNTWK  (Extract IDMSNTWK) *
* - Purpose: Extract the IDMSNTWK schema and related component. *
* - Default: No portion of the IDMSNTWK schema is migrated. *
* - To invoke this option, code: EXNTWK=Y *
* - To use the default, code: EXNTWK=N *
* - Comments: This option should only be used in very special *
* circumstances. Normally, extraction of the IDMSNTWK schema *
* and its components would cause increased processing time with *
* no tangible results. The IDMSNTWK schema is available to *
* every dictionary. Many of the components cannot be uploaded *
* using IDMS utilities. *
*
*
*
*
* 22. XELEMNT  (Exclude elements) *
* - Purpose: Omit all elements from migration. *
* - Default: Relevant elements are migrated. *
* - To invoke this option, code: XELEMNT=Y *
* - To use the default, code: XELEMNT=N *
*
*
*
*
* 23. XELECOB  (Exclude elements when COBOLFORMAT is used) *
* - Purpose: Omit all elements from migration when COBOLFORMAT is *
* used for records. *
* - Default: Relevant elements are migrated. *
* - To invoke this option, code: XELECOB=Y *
* - To use the default, code: XELECOB=N *
* - Comments: When COBOLFORMAT is used, elements referenced in the*
* records are automatically defined when the records are added. *
* The migration of elements is not necessary. However, if *
* additional documentation has been added to elements, such *
* documentation would be lost unless elements are explicitly *
* migrated. In such cases, this option should not be used. *
```

```
* 24. EXSYREC (Extract System Records) *
* - Purpose: Extract certain system records. *
* - Default: The records in question are omitted from migration. *
* - To invoke this option, code: EXSYREC=Y *
* - To use the default, code: EXSYREC=N *
* - System records are:
*     ADSO-APPLICATION-GLOBAL-RECORD *
*     ADSO-APPLICATION-MENU-RECORD *
*     ADSO-STAT-DEF-REC *
*     SUBSCHEMA-CTRL *
* - Comments: The system records are normally omitted from
* migration. These records are in every dictionary and usually
* have no changes. Because migration without CHANGEONLY would
* create DELETE RECORD syntax for these records and thus
* disconnect the records from all dialogs currently using them
* in the target dictionary, they should be omitted from
* migration.
* This option should only be used for special migrations when
* one of these records has changed and processing is planned to
* regenerate all affected dialogs in the target dictionary.
* EJECT
* XUDNXRT (Exclude All User Defined Nest from Extraction) *
*
* - Purpose: Omit entities related by user defined nests. *
* - Default: Entities related by user defined nests are extracted. *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNXRT=Y *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNXRT=N *
* - Comments: If this option is 'Y' all of the flags beginning
* XUDNX are set to 'Y'. It is not possible to override this
* option on an individual entity basis. If user defined nests
* extraction is desired for some entity types, but not others,
* code XUDNXRT=N and code 'Y' for the particular entity types
* desired.
*
* During the extraction phase of migration, Dictionary
* Migrator follows User Defined Nests as well as system defined
* nests to find all entities related to the entity named on the
* Extract Statement. In some cases, the relationships found are
* tenuous or documentation not related to the purpose of the
* migration. In such cases, user defined nests may be excluded
* from extraction in order to limit the number of entities
* migrated. Furthermore, occasionally a system nest and a user
* defined nest may relate the same entities by different paths.
* Dictionary Migrator may then produce a message 'ES00514E -
* ENTIY NEST EXPLOSION TABLE SIZE EXCEEDED'. These options
* may be used to circumvent this condition.
*
*
```

```
*      *
* 25. XUDNXEL  (Exclude Extraction of User Defined Nest - Elements)*
* - Purpose: Omit elements related by user defined nests.          *
* - Default: elements related by user defined nests are extracted.*
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNXEL=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNXEL=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNXRT.                         *
*
*
* 26. XUDNXRC
* - Purpose: Reserved byte                                         *
* - Code: XUDNXRC=N                                              *
* - Comments: This option is reserved for future use.           *
*
*
* 27. XUDNXMD  (Exclude Extraction of User Defined Nest - Modules) *
* - Purpose: Omit modules related by user defined nests.          *
* - Default: Modules related by user defined nests are extracted. *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNXMD=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNXMD=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNXRT.                         *
      EJECT
*
* 28. XUDNXUS  (Exclude Extraction of User Defined Nest - Users)   *
* - Purpose: Omit users related by user defined nests.            *
* - Default: Users related by user defined nests are extracted.  *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNXUS=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNXUS=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNXRT.                         *
*
*
* 29. XUDNXAT  (Exclude Extraction of User Defined Nest - Attributes)*
* - Purpose: Omit Attributes related by user defined nests.       *
* - Default: Attributes related by user defined nests are        *
*             extracted.                                           *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNXAT=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNXAT=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNXRT.                         *
*
*
* 30. XUDNXSY  (Exclude Extraction of User Defined Nest - Systems)  *
* - Purpose: Omit systems related by user defined nests.          *
* - Default: Systems related by user defined nests are extracted. *
* - To invoke this option, code: XUDNXSY=Y                         *
* - To use the default, code: XUDNXSY=N                         *
* - Comments: See comments under XUDNXRT.                         *
*
```

```
*          *
* 31. XIMSYNR  (Suppress the Syntax File Display Report)      *
* - Purpose: Suppress the Syntax File Display Report when      *
* RUN=IMPORT                                              *
* - Default: The Syntax File Display Report is produced when   *
* RUN=IMPORT or RUN=AUDIT.                                     *
* - To invoke this option, code: XIMSYNR=Y                   *
* - To use the default, code: XIMSYNR=N                   *
* - Comments: The Syntax File Display Report prints the contents  *
* of all syntax files. When RUN=IMPORT, and particularly with    *
* CHANGEONLY this report is useful, but not essential. If the    *
* user believes that the report is not needed, this option       *
* may be used. The option does not apply to RUN=AUDIT as the    *
* only difference between RUN=MIGRATE and RUN=AUDIT is the     *
* creation of this report.                                     *
*          *
*          *
*          *
* 32. DELADDS  (Use Delete and Add verbs for syntax)        *
* - Purpose: Instead of MODIFYING entities in the object      *
* dictionary, delete the entity and add it later.               *
* - Default: Entities will be modified whenever possible.      *
* - To invoke this option, code: DELADDS=Y                   *
* - To use the default, code: DELADDS=N                   *
* - Comments: The MODIFY verb insures that existing relationships*
* in the object dictionary will not be lost when a migration   *
* updates an entity. In some circumstances, a user may wish to  *
* still use DELETE/ADD. If this option is used, syntax is        *
* created without accessing the target dictionary; also, the     *
* DDDLDEL file contains valid syntax and should be part of     *
* the upload process.                                         *
* Migration to CA-IDMS/PC release 2.4 or earlier requires that *
* this option be set on.                                      *
* Note: This option invokes processing that is the same as     *
* non-changeonly processing prior to release 12.0.             *
*          *
*          *
* 33. EXTSAME  (Extract Same as relationships)                *
* - Purpose: Include in the extraction phase entities which are  *
* related to extracted entities by a same as relationship.      *
* - Default: Same as relationships are ignored.                 *
* - To invoke this option, code: EXTSAME=Y                   *
* - To use the default, code: EXTSAME=N                   *
* - Comments: Using the default value limits the scope of the   *
* migration and also can avoid table overflow due to multiple  *
* relationships between two entities.                         *
```

- * 34. DBABEND (ABend on Database Error)
 - Purpose: Force an Abend (and a dump) if an unexpected error status is returned from a database call.
 - Default: Unexpected Error status result in program termination with user condition code 2222.
 - To invoke this option, code: DBABEND=Y
 - To use the default, code: DBABEND=N
 - Comments: If this option is taken, the system completion code will be SOC1. Regardless of the value of this option, the relevant contents of subschema-ctrl will be displayed in the AUDIT file. In most cases, this information is sufficient for problem determination.
 - This option is only available for OS and VM. In a DOS environment, a unexpected database error status will always produce an operation exception.

- * 35. NOEXATT (Omit Extraction of Class-Attributes)
 - Purpose: Migrate entities including any reference to attributes but do not migrate any class-attribute structures.
 - Default: All entity types are migrated
 - To invoke this option, code: EXNOATT=Y
 - To use the default, code: EXNOATT=N
 - Comments: This option should only be considered when the CHANGEONLY parameter cannot be used. The extraction of Class-Attribute structures may significantly lengthen run times of migrations. As attributes are a documentation entities, they tend to have a low volatility. Hence, it is not necessary to migrate them on every migration.
 - This option eliminates the extraction of attributes, but all references to the attributes are retained in all other entity occurrences. If the target dictionary contains the same class-attribute structures, all documentation will be preserved.
 - When using this option, the user must insure that all Classes to be referenced exist in the target dictionary and that all attributes to be referenced either exist or will be added automatically to the target dictionary.
 - For Release 3.5 users, technical bulletin UM-9012-0014 must be applied.

```
*          *
* 36. NOEXCLS  (Omit Extraction of Class)          *
* - Purpose: Migrate attributes but do not migrate classes.          *
*   (The class will still be referenced in the attribute          *
*   statements)          *
* - Default: All entity types are migrated          *
* - To invoke this option, code: EXNOCLS=Y          *
* - To use the default, code: EXNOCLS=N          *
* - Comments: This option should only be considered when the          *
*   CHANGEONLY parameter cannot be used.          *
*   As Class entities are changed infrequently, it may not be          *
*   necessary to include them in every migration. Using this          *
*   option will cause extraction of attribute structures, but no          *
*   classes will be migrated.          *
* When using this option, the user must insure that all Classes          *
*   to be referenced exist in the target dictionary.          *
* For Release 3.5 users, technical bulletin UM-9012-0014 must          *
*   be applied.          *
*          *
*          *
*          *
* 37. NOEXSYS  (Omit Extraction of Systems)          *
* - Purpose: Migrate entities including references to systems          *
*   but do not migrate SYSTEM entity occurrences.          *
* - Default: All entity types are migrated          *
* - To invoke this option, code: EXNOSYS=Y          *
* - To use the default, code: EXNOSYS=N          *
* - Comments: This option should only be considered when the          *
*   CHANGEONLY parameter cannot be used.          *
*   As system entities are changed infrequently, it may not be          *
*   necessary to include them in every migration. Using this          *
*   option will all references to systems to be preserved in any          *
*   entity occurrence, but no system entities occurrences will be          *
*   migrated.          *
* When using this option, the user must insure that all systems          *
*   to be referenced exist in the target dictionary.          *
* For Release 3.5 users, technical bulletin UM-9012-0014 must          *
*   be applied.          *
*          *
* 38. STOPVER  (Stop after Validation error)          *
* - Purpose: When a critical level error is encountered during          *
*   validation, stop execution at the end of the validation          *
*   process.          *
```

```
* - Default: Execution continues until all processing defined by *
* the run type is completed. *
* - To invoke this option, code: STOPVER=Y *
* - To use the default, code: STOPVER=N *
* - Comments: This option is only relevant when the run type is *
* MIGRATE, AUDIT, or IMPORT. *
* If this option is used, a critical error will terminate *
* processing before the syntax is created, and a condition code *
* of 8 will also be set in MVS. If no errors are detected *
* during validation, the syntax will be created. The same job *
* can contain the upload steps using conditional processing *
* which checks the cc of the migrator step. The upload steps *
* would only be run when there are no errors requiring review. *
* Note: No messages have a default severity of critical. The *
* user must decide which errors should be considered critical *
* and update the message severity table accordingly. *
*
* 39. NOATRXP (Do not explode attribute network if LEVEL=ONLY) *
* - Purpose: If LEVEL=only migration is specified for CLASS, *
* CLSATTR or ATTRIBUTES the attribute explosion set is followed *
* which can result in the migration of a network of attributes. *
* - Default: Explosion sets are followed *
* - To invoke this option, code: NOATRXP=Y *
* - To use the default, code: NOATRXP=N *
* - Comments: This option only applies in the case of a *
* LEVEL=ONLY migration. *
* If this option is applied then only the referenced attribute *
* (attribute migration) or attributes within the class (class *
* migration) will be extracted from the source dictionary. *
*
* 40. NOSAUTH (Bypass source dictionary security checking) *
* - Purpose: Userid/Password are verified as having display *
* authority in the source dictionary, for signon, override *
* authorization (if specified) and for each extracted entity *
* type. If this authorization check fails MIGRATOR will abort. *
* - Default: Security checking will be performed *
* - To invoke this option, code: NOSAUTH=Y *
* - To use the default, code: NOSAUTH=N *
*
* 41. NOTAUTH (Bypass target dictionary security checking) *
* - Purpose: Userid/Password are verified as having update *
* authority in the target dictionary, for signon, override *
* authorization (if specified) and for each extracted entity *
* type. If this authorization check fails MIGRATOR will abort. *
* - Default: Security checking will be performed *
* - To invoke this option, code: NOTAUTH=Y *
* - To use the default, code: NOTAUTH=N *
```

```
* 42. ENTLAB    (Entity type labels)          *
* - Purpose: Place a marker at the beginning of each new entity      *
*   type in the DDDLUPD file showing an entity type code.            *
* - Default: No labels will be inserted                                *
* - To invoke this option, code: ENTLAB=Y                               *
* - To use the default, code: ENTLAB=N                               *
* - Comments: This option is primarily for use when migrating       *
*   to an IDMS/PC environment. The labels can be used when           *
*   dividing the DDDLUPD file into entity type specific files        *
*   which are compatible with IDMS/PC. (The PC program USMSPLIT     *
*   is available for this task.)                                         *
* Migration to CA-IDMS/PC requires that this option be set on.      *
*
* 43. ABGNSRC   (Adsobgen Source for Dialogs)                         *
* - Purpose: Format the ADSOBGN file so it may be used as input       *
*   to a culprit report which creates syntax for 'Generate from      *
*   source' for the ADSOBGEN utility.                                    *
* - Default: 'Generate from load ' syntax is created.                 *
* - To invoke this option, code: ABGNSRC=Y                            *
* - To use the default, code: ABGNSRC=N                            *
* - Comments: This option is primarily for use when migrating       *
*   to an IDMS/PC environment or other cases where adsobgen         *
*   source statement are useful.                                       *
* Migration to CA-IDMS/PC requires that this option be set on.      *
*
*
* 44. XSIGNON   (Omit Signon From Syntax Files)                      *
* - Purpose: Format all Syntax files without a Signon statement.       *
* - Default: Signon statements using data from run time parameters*
*   is generated for as appropriate for each syntax file.*          *
* - To invoke this option, code: XSIGNON=Y                           *
* - To use the default, code: XSIGNON=N                           *
* - Comments: This option allows a separate file with signon        *
*   information to be concatenated to the syntax file at upload     *
*   time.                                                       *
* Warning: Certain files may be empty if this option is used        *
* when no separate signon statement file is concatenated and       *
* no occurrences of a given entity type are migrated.                *
* Empty files will cause the upload utilities to abend.             *
*
```

```
*  
* 45. XSIGMAP (Omit Signon From MAP Syntax Files RHDCDEL/RHDCUPD) *  
* - Purpose: Format Map Compiler Syntax Files without A Signon. *  
* - Default: Signon statements using data from run time parameters*  
*           are generated as appropriate for MAP syntax file.      *  
* - To invoke this option, code: XSIGMAP=Y                      *  
* - To use the default, code: XSIGMAP=N                      *  
* - Comments: The Batch Mapping compiler RHDCMAP1 has been       *  
*           enhanced to allow access to a signon-required dictionary when *  
*           no signon card is provided if the userid of the person who     *  
*           submitted the job has access to the dictionary. This allows    *  
*           Dictionary Migrator users to utilize this facility regardless *  
*           of the format of the other syntax files.                    *  
*           Warning: MAP syntax files may be empty if this option is used*  
*           when no separate signon statement file is concatenated and   *  
*           no occurrences of a given entity type are migrated.          *  
*           Empty files will cause the upload utilities to abend.        *  
*  
* 46. XEQUUDAT (Skip extraction of entities with equal dates) *  
* - Purpose: To avoid extraction of entities with equal dates where*  
*           timestamps are not supported in CHANGEONLY migration.*  
* - Default: Entities with equal dates and no time stamps will be *  
*           marked for extraction in a CHANGEONLY migration.          *  
* - To invoke this option, code: XEQUUDAT=Y                      *  
* - To use the default, code: XEQUUDAT=N                      *  
* - Comments: Date and Timestamps are used are the basis for       *  
*           comparison in a CHANGEONLY migration. Where dates are equal  *  
*           are no timestamp is supported, the entity will be marked for  *  
*           extraction. This can result in unnecessary migration of many *  
*           entities. Elements are an example. By setting XEQUUDAT=Y you  *  
*           will avoid the migration of such entities.                  *  
*  
*****
```

F.7 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Migrator Assistant Runtime Parameters

```
*-----  
* CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MIGRATOR ASSISTANT RUNTIME PARAMETERS      *  
*-----  
* XDMTPARM CSECT          CONTROL TABLE FOR DMA      *  
*-----  
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS      *  
*-----  
*XDMCPARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the *  
*          DMA system to provide run-time values.      *  
*-----  
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES      *  
*-----  
*          DMATSK=(1-8 CHAR)    Task used to invoke DMA.      *  
*-----  
*          HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate dictionary used for      *  
*                         GSIHELP.      *  
*-----  
*          HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate node used for GSIHELP.      *  
*-----  
*          HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number of HELP modules.      *  
*-----  
* For example :      *  
*          XDMCPARM DMATSK=DMA,      *  
*                      HLPDICT=,      *  
*                      HLPNODE=,      *  
*                      HLPVERS=0      *  
*-----
```

F.8 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Module Editor Runtime Parameters

```

*-----*
* CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY MODULE EDITOR RUNTIME PARAMETERS      *
*-----*
* USETPARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR DME      *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS      *
*-----*
*USETPARM -- This member is used to specify the run-time values to      *
* be used as input to the installation tailoring macro,      *
* USECPARM, which is dynamically loaded by online menu      *
* USEAMEN, and the active and passive d.m.e. modules.      *
*-----*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES      *
*-----*
* HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate dict for online help      *
* HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate node for online help      *
* HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number of help modules.      *
*-----*
* LOCK=(Y/N)           IDD db locking (YES or NO)      *
*-----*
*          Y = longterm dbkey locks are      *
*          set on a module when an      *
*          edit session is started      *
*-----*
*          N = longterm dbkey locks are not      *
*          set, should only be done on      *
*          advice from CA technical      *
*          staff.      *
*-----*
* SCROLL=PAGE       scroll amount      *
*                   PAGE|HALF|CSR      *
*-----*
* DELIMIT=;         command delimit      *
*-----*
* PAD=              pad character      *
*                   N|B    nulls|blanks      *
*-----*
* VERSION=HIGHEST  default idd version number      *
*                   HIGHEST - select the highest ver      *
*-----*
*                   LOWEST - select the lowest ver      *

```

```
*          SECURITY=I      security system in force      *
*                      (reserved)                         *
*                      I = idd (default)                   *
*                      D = dbms                          *
*                      B = dbms and idd                  *
*
*          USERID=INPUT   allow changes to userid from    *
*                      within DME session                 *
*                      INPUT = userid change allowed     *
*                      PROT  = userid change not allowed  *
*
*          MODSORT=Y     default to sorted module list   *
*                      Y = module sort assumed           *
*                      N = module sort not assumed        *
*                      (large shop option)                *
*
*          SETDB=N       reset database                  *
*                      Y = reset database/node to       *
*                      original value on DME entry       *
*                      N = do not reset database/node     *
*                      default                         *
*
*          CLRKEND=Y     clear key = end               *
*                      Y = clear key = end             *
*                      original value on dme entry     *
*                      default                         *
*                      N = clear key = reshown          *
*
*          For example :
*          USECPARM HLPDICT=,          HELP DICTIONARY      *
*                      HLPNODE=,          HELP NODE          *
*                      HLPVERS=1,         VERSION OF HELP TEXT  *
*                      LOCK=Y,           LOCK (YES|NO)        *
*                      SCROLL=PAGE,       SCROLL AMOUNT       *
*                      DELIMIT=;;,       COMMAND DELIMIT     *
*                      PAD=N,            PAD CHARACTER       *
*                      VERSION=HIGHEST,  DEFAULT IDD VERSION NUMBER *
*                      SECURITY=I,       SECURITY SYSTEM IN FORCE  *
*                      USERID=INPUT,     CHANGE ALLOWED TO USER ID   *
*                      MODSORT=Y,       MODULE SORT ON        *
*                      SETDB=Y,          SET DATABASE          *
*                      CLRKEND=Y,       CLEAR KEY IS END  COMMAND  *
```

F.9 CA-IDMS/Dictionary Query Facility

```
*-----*
* CA-IDMS/DICTIONARY QUERY FACILITY RUNTIME PARAMETERS *
*-----*
* DADTPARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR DQF   *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS           *
*-----*
*DADTPARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the   *
*          DQF system to provide run-time values.                   *
*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES                         *
*-----*
*          HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)    Alternate dictionary used for   *
*                                GSIHELP.                     *
*
*          HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)    Alternate node used for GSIHELP.   *
*
*          HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number of HELP modules.   *
*
* For example :                                         *
*          DADCPARM HLPDICT=,                           *
*                      HLPNODE=,                          *
*                      HLPVERS=1                         *
*-----*
```

F.10 CA-IDMS/DML Online Runtime Parameters

```
*-----*
* CA-IDMS/DML Online Runtime Parameters *
*-----*
* USDTARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR DMLO *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *
*-----*
* USDTARM -- IS THE INSTALLATION TAILORING MODULE USED BY DML/O *
*          TO PROVIDE CUSTOM RUNTIME AND DEFAULT VALUES *
*
* USDTARM is an independent load module which incorporates values *
* generated by USDCPARM, as well as various tables. *
*
* It is loaded at run time by program USDTPIFN. *
*
* 15.0   12/01/00      ADD SUPPORT FOR DEFDBNM PARAMETER (39) *
* 14.0.1  01/08/99  DEVDE01  ADD SUPPORT FOR DEFENTK PARAMETER (38) *
*
*-----*
*
* Your responsibility as installer is to:
*
* 1. Select appropriate values for the macro parameters at the end. *
*
* 2. Update the following source modules as appropriate:
*    .. USD@MOPS  Menu-mode DML op codes
*    .. USD@MTXT  Menu-mode descriptive text
*    .. USD@MSTL  Menu-mode static area description
*    .. USD@SSEX  Subschema exclusion list
*    .. USD@DSPC  Displayable characters
*    .. USD@KYWD  Standard abbreviations
*
* 3. Assemble and linkedit program USDTARM *
*
*-----*
*
* Following is an explanation for each parameter of macro USDCPARM *
*
*-----*
*
* (1) : ==> HLPDICT  Alternate dictionary used for help modules *
*
*          Dictionary name (dictname) of dictionary into which the *
*          online documentation / help modules have been placed *
*          parameter is optional, default value is ' '. *
*-----*
```

```
*-----*  
*  
* (2) : ==> HLPNODE Alternate dictnode used for help modules *  
*  
*      Dictionary node (dictnode) of dictionary into which the *  
*      online documentation / help modules have been placed *  
*      parameter is optional, default value is ' '.*  
*-----*  
*  
* (3) : ==> HLPVERS Version number of the help modules *  
*  
*      Version of dictionary online documentation modules. *  
*      Parameter is optional, default value is 1.*  
*-----*  
*  
* (4) : ==> LOWCASE Lower case option (Y/N) *  
*  
*      Initial value "lower case data accepted" option on the *  
*      DML0 signon screen. *  
*      Value is changeable during session *  
*          with SET LOWCASE (ON/OFF) command. *  
*      Acceptable values are 'Y' or 'N' *  
*      Parameter is optional, default value 'N'. *  
*-----*  
*  
* (5) : ==> DPRTCL DC print class *  
*  
*      Initial setting of "print class" option on DML0 signon *  
*      screen. *  
*      Value is changeable during session from options screen. *  
*  
*      Parameter is optional, default value '1'. *  
*-----*  
*  
* (6) : ==> TPRTCL TSO print class *  
*  
*      Initial setting of "print class" option on DML0 signon *  
*      screen. *  
*      Value is changeable during session from options screen. *  
*  
*      Parameter is optional, default value 'A'. *  
*-----*
```

```
*-----*
* (7) : ==> CPRTCL      CICS print class
*
*       Initial setting of "print class" option on DML0 signon
*       screen.
*       Value is changeable during session from options screen.
*       *** printing is not currently available from CICS ***
*
*       Parameter is optional, default value 'A'.
*-----*
*
* (8) : ==> DISPLAY     Display fmt (COBOL/VERTICAL)
*
*       Initial setting of display option for DML0 session.
*
*       Value is changeable during session
*           with SET COBOL (ON/OFF) command.
*
*       Acceptable values are 'COBOL' or 'VERTICAL'
*           where COBOL = leveled, indented, cobol-like format
*           VERTICAL = R4.6 and earlier non-leveled format
*
*       Parameter is optional, default value 'COBOL'.
*-----*
*
* (9) : ==> AUTOHEX     Autohex option (ON/OFF)
*
*       Initial setting of autohex option for DML0 session.
*
*       Value is changeable during session
*           with SET AUTOHEX (ON/OFF) command.
*
*       Acceptable values are 'ON' or 'OFF'
*           where ON ==> fields containing invalid data will be
*           automatically displayed in hex format.
*
*       Parameter is optional, default value 'ON'.
*-----*
```

```
*-----*
* (10) : ==> AUTOBND    Auto-bind option (ON/OFF)
*
*           Initial setting of autobind option for DML0 session.
*
*           Value is changeable during session
*               with SET AUTOBIND (ON/OFF) command.
*
*           Acceptable values are 'ON' or 'OFF'
*               where ON ==> records will be automatically bound
*                   at the first reference in dml commands
*
*           Parameter is optional, default value 'ON'.
*-----*
*
* (11) : ==> MAPIN      Data/command inp (FAST/STEP)
*
*           Initial setting of mapin option for DML0 session.
*
*           Value is changeable during session
*               with SET MAPIN (FAST/STEP) command
*
*           Acceptable values are 'FAST' or 'STEP'
*               where FAST ==> data updates and command/pfkey input
*                   will be accepted in the same
*                       pseudo-converse.
*
*           Note that releases prior to R5.5 DML0 only
*               functioned in 'STEP' mode.
*
*           Parameter is optional, default value 'FAST'
*-----*
*
* (12) : ==> CLIST      Clist execution (FAST/STEP)
*
*           Initial setting of clist execution option for session.
*
*           Value is changeable during session
*               with SET CLIST (FAST/STEP) command
*
*           Acceptable values are 'FAST' or 'STEP'
*               where FAST ==> clist execution will be in fast mode.
*
*           Parameter is optional, default value 'FAST'
*-----*
```

```
*-----*
* (13) : ==> DSPCMND    Command display (INPUT/USED)
*
*           Initial setting of command display option for session.
*
*           Value is changeable during session
*                 with SET CMND (INPUT/USED) command
*
*           Acceptable values are 'USED' or 'INPUT'
*                 where USED ==> command line echo will be in the
*                           expanded format as used by the
*                           command processor
*                 INPUT ==> command line echo will be as entered
*
*           Parameter is optional, default value 'INPUT'
*-----*
*
* (14) : ==> LRFSCRN    LRF screen fmt (NORM/MAX)
*
*           Initial setting of LRF screen format option.
*
*           Value is changeable during session
*                 with SHOW OPTIONS command
*
*           Acceptable values are 'NORM' or 'MAX'
*                 where NORM ==> screen format for LRF subschemas
*                           initially will be standard
*                           'expert' format
*                 MAX ==> screen format for LRF subschemas
*                           initially will allow for maximum
*                           command length
*
*           Parameter is optional, default value 'NORM'
*-----*
*
* (15) : ==> MODE       session mode (EXPERT/MENU)
*
*           Initial default setting for menu-mode operation.
*
*           Value is changeable during session
*                 with SET MENU (ON/OFF) command
*
*           Acceptable values are 'MENU' or 'EXPERT'
*                 where MENU ==> DMLO will startup in menu-mode format
*                 EXPERT ==> DMLO will startup in expert format
*
*           Parameter is optional, default value 'EXPERT'
*-----*
```

```

*-----*
* (16) : ==> USERXIT      user exit option
*
*       User exit option.
*       Parameter is optional, default value 'NO'
*       Acceptable values are :
*
*           YES      = User exit module is available, will be
*                         invoked for each dml verb executed, and
*                         option is not changeable by the user
*                         during the DML0 session
*
*           NO       = User exit will not be invoked, and
*                         option is not changeable by the user
*                         during the DML0 session
*
*           (DYNAMIC,OFF) = User exit module is available, but is
*                             not active for the session until the
*                             SET EXIT ON command is issued. All
*                             dml verbs are eligible for the exit
*                             unless specifically turned off during
*                             the session.
*
*           (DYNAMIC,ON)  = User exit module is available, and will
*                             be active for the session until the
*                             SET EXIT OFF command is issued. All
*                             dml verbs are eligible for the exit
*                             unless specifically turned off during
*                             the session.
*
*           DYNAMIC    = Equivalent to (DYNAMIC,OFF)
*           DYNAM
*-----*
*
* (17) : ==> GLOBID      Global (sys owned) profile/clist owner
*
*       Internal owner id for global (system-owned)
*       profiles and clists
*
*       Value is changeable only by reassembly of USDTPARM
*
*       Parameter optional, default value 'DMLOSYS'
*-----*

```

```
*-----*
* (18) : ==> ADMIN      DML0 administrator signon (1)
* (19) : ==> ADMIN2     DML0 administrator signon (2)
*
*      Signon userids for which DML0 will allow restricted
*      profile and clist maintenance functions
*
*      Value is changeable only by reassembly of USDTPARM
*
*      Parameter optional, default values 'USERID01' 'USERID02'
*
*-----*
* (20) : ==> USERID    chg userid ? (INPUT/PROT)
*
*      Indicates whether userid from IDMS/DC signon may be
*      be changed at DML0 session signon.
*
*-----*
*      Values are : INPUT ==> userid/password may be entered
*                      on the DML0 signon screen
*                      PROT ==> userid/password protected
*                          on the DML0 signon screen
*
*      Parameter is optional, default value INPUT
*
*-----*
* (21) : ==> NONDSPN   Nondisplay translation
*
*      Initial value for translation of characters which
*      are considered to be non-displayable based on
*      contents of table described by member USD@DSPC
*
*      Value is changeable during session
*          with SET NONDISPLAY x command
*
*      Parameter is optional, default value c' _ '
*
*-----*
* (22) : ==> DEFdict   default signon dictionary
* (23) : ==> DEFnode    default signon dict. node
*
*      default signon screen dictionary name.
*      default signon screen dictionary node.
*
*      Any values specified here will appear each time the
*      DML0 signon screen is presented
```

```
*-----*  
*  
* (24) : ==> PRFDBNM    profile segment (db) name  
* (25) : ==> PRFDBND    profile segment (db) node  
*  
*      segment name and node (dbname/dbnode)  
*      for profile/clist subschema  
*  
*      parameters set by installation process to match dmcl  
*      changes.  
*-----*  
*  
* (26) : ==> SBUFNM     default scratch rec name prefix  
*  
*      Prefix for default scratch record names  
*  
*      If no other record name specified for scratch i/o  
*      requests, DML0 will create a record/element structure  
*      whose name is ssssn where ssss is specified by SBUFN  
*      and n is 0-9.  
*  
* (27) : ==> QBUFNM     default queue   rec name prefix  
*  
*      Prefix for default queue record names  
*  
*      If no other record name specified for queue i/o  
*      requests, DML0 will create a record/element structure  
*      whose name is qqqqn where qqqq is specified by QBUFN  
*      and n is 0-9.  
*  
* (28) : ==> SQBUFL     default scr/que rec max len  
*  
*      Default scratch/queue buffer length  
*  
*      This value is the buffer length for all records  
*      which DML0 allocates using the default scratch and  
*      queue record name prefixes.  
*
```

```
*          *
* (29) : ==> ATTNKEY    attention/interrupt          *
*          *
*          Initial value of "interrupt" key which appears on the      *
*          DMLO signon screen. note it is changeable at that time.      *
*          acceptable values are PA1-PA3, or PF1-PF24.          *
*          *
*          Parameter is optional, default value is 'PA1'.          *
*-----*
*          *
* (30-37) These represent initial values of pf key settings.      *
*          allowed formats are :          *
*              ....KEY=(PFx,PFy)          *
*              ....KEY=(PFx)          *
*              ....KEY=PFx          *
*          *
*          All keys are changeable during the session except          *
*          SNONKEY == signon screen help          *
*          PROFKEY == signon profile list          *
*-----*
*          *
* (30) : ==> SNONKEY    help (signon)          *
*          *
*          Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to      *
*          invoke online documentation for signon screen          *
*          *
*          Keys changeable only at installation          *
*          *
*          Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.          *
*          *
*          default values : 'PF2' and 'PF14'          *
*-----*
*          *
* (31) : ==> PROFKEY    signon profile list          *
*          *
*          Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to      *
*          request a profile list from signon screen          *
*          *
*          Keys changeable only at installation          *
*          *
*          Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.          *
*          *
*          default values : 'PF4' and 'PF16'          *
*-----*
```

```

*-----*
* (32) : ==> HELPKEY    help (DML0)
*
*      Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to
*      invoke DML0 online documentation (help) displays.
*
*      Keys changeable during session.
*
*      Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.
*
*      default values : 'PF1' and 'PF13'
*-----*
*-----*
* (33) : ==> SHOWKEY    show pfkeys
*
*      Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to
*      request display/update of all pf keys.
*
*      Keys changeable during the session
*
*      Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.
*
*      default values : 'PF2' and 'PF14'
*-----*
*-----*
* (34) : ==> PENDKEY    end / goback function
*
*      Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to
*      request end/goback from secondary DML0 displays
*
*      Keys changeable during the session
*
*      Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.
*
*      default values : 'PF3' and 'PF15'
*-----*
*-----*
* (35) : ==> DISPKEY    display &d
*
*      Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to
*      request redisplay function.
*
*      Keys changeable during the session
*
*      Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.
*
*      default values : 'PF4' and 'PF16'
*-----*
*-----*
* (36) : ==> PGUPKEY    scroll up
*
*      Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to
*      page/scroll display up (toward the first line)
*

```

```
*          Keys changeable during the session          *
*          Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.          *
*          Default values : 'PF7' and 'PF19'          *
*-----*
*          (37) : ==> PGDNKEY      scroll down          *
*          Initial value of primary and alternate pf keys used to      *
*          page/scroll display down (toward the last line)          *
*          Keys changeable during the session          *
*          Acceptable values are PF1-PF24.          *
*          Default values : 'PF8' and 'PF20'          *
*-----*
*          (38) : ==> DEFENTK      default use of ENTER key (Y/N)          *
*          Default processing mode when ENTER key alone is hit,      *
*          with no other data typed/overtyped on command line.      *
*          Default value is 'Y'. Default action clears command line.      *
*          Alternate setting is 'N'. This will cause the last      *
*          command on the command line (if any) to be re-executed.      *
*          This can be used to repeat/obtain next/previous      *
*          DML command without having to overtype any characters.      *
*          Value is also dynamically changeable for session      *
*          duration using the : SET DEFENTK (ON/OFF) command.      *
*          Default value: DEFENTK = 'Y' DO NOT RE-EXECUTE COMMAND      *
*          Alternate value: DEFENTK = 'N' DO RE-EXECUTE COMMAND      *
*-----*
*          (39) : ==> DEFDBNM      DEFAULT SIGNON DBNAME          *
*          DEFAULT SIGNON SCREEN DBNAME.          *
*          ANY VALUES SPECIFIED HERE WILL APPEAR EACH TIME THE      *
*          DMLO SIGNON SCREEN IS PRESENTED          *
*-----*
*****-*-----*
*-----*
*          Enter values for your installation below          *
*          The explanation of each parameter is above.          *
*          Note: unless marked with a (P) the parameters represent the      *
*          default or initial values, and can be changed during the DMLO      *
```

* session.*

F.11 CA-IDMS/Enforcer Runtime Parameters

```
*-----*
* CA-IDMS/ENFORER RUNTIME PARAMETERS *
*-----*
* ESXTPARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR ENF *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*ESXTPARM -- This member is used to specify the run-time values to *
*          be used as input to the installation tailoring macro,   *
*          ESXCPARM, which is dynamically loaded by online menu   *
*          ESXAMEN, and the active and passive enforcement modules.* *
*-----*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES *
*-----*
*          ENFTSK=(1-8 CHAR)    Task used to invoke The Enforcer. *
*          HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate dictionary used for      *
*                                GSIHELP. *
*          HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate node used for GSIHELP. *
*          HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number of HELP modules. *
*          LOKMODE=(D/B/M)      IDD deadlock processing directive *
*                                where: *
*                                D = DEADLOCK--Allow full Enforcer *
*                                     diagnostics. This mode will *
*                                     cause deadlocks against con- *
*                                     current update of the same *
*                                     entity type in the same *
*                                     dictionary. *
*                                B = BATCH MODE--Only allows IDD- *
*                                     FORMAT error messages but *
*                                     precludes deadlock errors. *
*                                M = IDDM ONLY--Allows full *
*                                     Enforcer diagnostics for *
*                                     IDDM transactions. All *
*                                     other processing is identical *
*                                     to BATCH MODE. *
*-----*
```

```
*USPS: New PARMs to indicate which delimiters are valid for element      *
*      designation for bracket mode templates.                            *
*      DSPACE=(Y/N)           SPACE delimited words allowed.          *
*                           Y = Yes (Allowed)                         *
*                           N = No  (Allowed)                          *
*      DDASH=(Y/N)           DASH (-) Delimited words allowed.       *
*                           Y = Yes (Allowed)                         *
*                           N = No  (Allowed)                          *
*      DULINE=(Y/N)          ULINE(_) Delimited words allowed.      *
*                           Y = Yes (Allowed)                         *
*                           N = No  (Allowed)                          *
*                           *                                         *
*                           *                                         *
* For example :                                                 *
*      ESXCPARM ENFTSK=ENFORCER,                                *
*                  HLPDICT=,                                     *
*                  HLPNODE=,                                    *
*                  HLPVERS=1,                                   *
*                  LOKMODE=D,                                 *
*                  DSPACE=Y,                                  *
*                  DDASH=Y,                                  *
*                  DULINE=Y                                *
*-----*
```

F.12 CA-IDMS/Masterkey Runtime Parameters

```
*-----*
* CA-IDMS/MASTERKEY RUNTIME PARAMETERS *
*-----*
* SSKTPARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR MASTERKEY *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*SSKCPARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the *
*          MASTERKEY system to provide run-time values. *
*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES *
*-----*
*          HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate dictionary used for *
*          GSIHELP. *
*
*          HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate node used for GSIHELP *
*
*          HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number of HELP modules. *
*
*          CLTDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Dictname for transient clists. *
*
*          CLTNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Dictnode for transient clists. *
*
* For example : *
*          SSKCPARM HLPDICT=,
*          HLPNODE=,
*          HLPVERS=1,
*          CLTDICT=,
*          CLTNODE=
*-----*
```

F.13 CA-IDMS/Online Log Display

```
*-----*
* CA-IDMS/ONLINE LOG DISPLAY RUNTIME PARAMETERS      *
*-----*
* USKTPARM CSECT          CONTROL TABLE FOR LOGD   *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS           *
*-----*
*USKCPARM -- This is the installation tailoring macro used by the   *
* LOGD system to provide run-time values.                         *
*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES                         *
*-----*
* LOGDTSK=(1-8 CHAR)    Task used to invoke LOGD.        *
*
* HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)    Alternate dictionary used for   *
*                       GSIHELP.                      *
*
* HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)    Alternate node used for GSIHELP  *
*
* HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM)  Version number of HELP modules.  *
*
* For example :                                              *
*   USKCPARM LOGDTSK=LOGD,                                     *
*             HLPDICT=,                                         *
*             HLPNODE=,                                         *
*             HLPVERS=1                                         *
*-----*
```

F.14 CA-IDMS/SASO Runtime Parameters

```
*-----*
* CA-IDMS/SASO RUNTIME PARAMETERS *
*-----*
* ESSTPARM CSECT           CONTROL TABLE FOR SASO *
*-----*
*          MODIFY PRODUCT TUNING PARAMETERS *
*-----*
*ESSTPARM -- This member is used to specify the run-time values to      *
* be used as input to the installation tailoring macro,                  *
* ESSCPARM, which is dynamically loaded by SASO product                  *
* installation utility function to initially establish                 *
* online system defaults and by online menu ESSAMENU.                   *
*
*          RUN-TIME VARIABLES *
*-----*
* SASOTSK=(1-8 CHAR)   Task used to invoke SASO. *
* HLPDICT=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate dictionary used for      *
*                      GSIHELP. *
* HLPNODE=(1-8 CHAR)   Alternate node used FOR GSIHELP. *
* HLPVERS=(1-9999 NUM) Version number of HELP modules. *
* DEFDOC=(1-8 CHAR)    Default document database       *
*                      name table entry (DBNAME). *
* JCL1=(1-79 CHAR)    Default JCL job card lines     *
*                      for initial user profiles. *
* JCL2=(1-79 CHAR)    Default JCL job card lines     *
*                      for initial user profiles. *
* JCL3=(1-79 CHAR)    Default JCL job card lines     *
*                      for initial user profiles. *
*
* NOTE: JCL values MUST be enclosed in single quotes. *
*        Default values DO NOT require quotes. *
*
* For example : *
*   ESSCPARM SASOTSK=SASO, *
*             HLPDICT=, *
*             HLPNODE=, *
*             HLPVERS=1, *
*             DEFDOC=SPG, *
*             JCL1=, *
*             JCL2=, *
*             JCL3=, *
*
* NOTE: Null specification of JCL lines causes SASO to use the      *
* predefined defaults related to the run-time operating            *
* system in which the product is installed. *
*-----*
```

Appendix G. CA-IDMS/DMLO Security and Access Considerations

G.1	Overview	.....	G-3
G.2	CA-IDMS/DMLO Security	.....	G-4
G.2.1	Security Levels and Access by Usage Mode	.....	G-4
G.2.1.1	Level 1 Security	.....	G-4
G.2.1.2	Level 2 Security	.....	G-4
G.2.1.3	Level 3 Security	.....	G-4
G.2.2	Access by Usage Mode	.....	G-5
G.2.3	Defining Security and Limiting Access by Usage Mode	.....	G-6
G.2.4	Defining the Security Level	.....	G-6
G.2.5	Bypassing Security	.....	G-6
G.2.6	Adding a User Id and Password to the Dictionary	.....	G-6
G.2.7	Registering the Subschema to Users	.....	G-7
G.2.8	Restricting Usage Mode Access at a Global Level	.....	G-7
G.2.9	Restricting Usage Mode Access at the User Level	.....	G-7
G.2.10	Central CA-IDMS Security	.....	G-8

G.1 Overview

This appendix describes security and access restrictions that can be applied to any dictionary that contains subschemas to be accessed using CA-IDMS/DML Online.

G.2 CA-IDMS/DMLO Security

By implementing DML Online security, you can limit access to your subschemas to authorized users.

Three different levels of security checks, based upon user id and password, can be performed by DML Online. In addition, you can restrict the type of access users have to areas in their subschemas. Restricting access limits the usage modes that DML Online processes. The DML Online security checking routine gives the user three chances to enter required fields correctly during the sign-on process. If the user's third attempt fails, the TERMINATION SCREEN appears and ends the session.

The following pages explain:

- Security levels and access by usage mode.
- Defining security and limiting access by usage mode.

G.2.1 Security Levels and Access by Usage Mode

This section describes the three levels of security and access by usage mode. (Table E-1 summarizes the three levels of DML/Online security.)

G.2.1.1 Level 1 Security

Level 1 security indicates that a security check is not needed. Any user signing on to DML Online using a valid subschema name is permitted to access the database. Level 1 is the default security level.

G.2.1.2 Level 2 Security

With Level 2 security, DML Online verifies that a valid user id and password combination are being used. The user id and password must be added to the IDMS Dictionary/Directory. (See the following section, Adding a User Id and Password to the Dictionary.) If a user id and password are valid, the user can access any valid subschema.

Level 2 security requires the user to supply three fields during the sign-on process: user id, password and subschema name.

G.2.1.3 Level 3 Security

With Level 3 security, DML Online verifies that a valid user id and password combination are being used. In addition, DML Online verifies that the user has authorization to access the requested subschema. The user id must be registered for access to the requested subschema in the IDMS Dictionary/Directory. (See the following section, Registering the Subschema to Users.)

Level 3 security requires the user to supply three fields during the sign-on process: user id, password and subschema name.

Note: If the user is identified by a null password, the password check is not performed. The user id, however, is checked.

Security Level	Security Check Performed	Screen Entry(s) Required	Explanation
1	No	Subschema	DML Online checks that the subschema name entered at sign-on is valid.
2	Yes	Subschema, User Id, Password	DML Online checks that the subschema name entered at sign-on is valid and checks that the user id and password combination entered at sign-on has been added to the dictionary.
3	Yes	Subschema, User Id, Password	DML Online checks that the subschema name entered at sign-on is valid. It also verifies that the user id and password combination entered at sign-on has been added to the dictionary and checks that the user id is authorized to access the requested subschema.

G.2.2 Access by Usage Mode

DML Online has six standard usage modes:

- SU (Shared Update)
- SR (Shared Retrieval)
- PU (Protected Update)
- PR (Protected Retrieval)
- EU (Exclusive Update)
- ER (Exclusive Retrieval)

You can restrict the type of subschema access users have by limiting the usage modes DML Online processes. You can restrict access both globally and by user.

G.2.3 Defining Security and Limiting Access by Usage Mode

You define security and limit access by usage mode during the installation of DML/Online. If you define security, a security check is performed each time a user signs on to DML Online. If you limit access by usage mode, a usage mode check is performed each time a user requests to ready an area.

G.2.4 Defining the Security Level

To implement security, you must define the program name DBMSDMLO with a version number of 1, 2 or 3. The version number corresponds to the security level desired (see the table in Level 3 Security). DML Online checks the dictionary for the program name DBMSDMLO and the version number at sign-on to determine the level of security checking to perform. (Your dictionary should not contain more than one version of DBMSDMLO at one time.)

The DBMSDMLO program name can be added through the IDD DDDL compiler by using this syntax:

```
ADD           1  
    PROGRAM NAME IS DBMSDMLO VERSION IS 2.  
MODIFY       3
```

Do not use the PROGRAM DESCRIPTION except as described in Restricting Usage Mode Access at a Global Level.

If you are using multiple dictionaries, you must register DBMSDMLO for each dictionary in which security is needed.

G.2.5 Bypassing Security

If the program DBMSDMLO has not been registered or is registered with Version 1, security is not supported and security checks are bypassed. The only check DML Online performs is validation of the subschema name.

Bypassing security can be appropriate in a test environment.

G.2.6 Adding a User Id and Password to the Dictionary

Userids and passwords for security Levels 2 and 3 are also added to the dictionary by the DDDL compiler. Use the following syntax to add users:

```
ADD           USER NAME IS user-id PASSWORD IS password.  
MODIFY
```

Do not use the USER DESCRIPTION except as described in "Restricting Usage Mode Access at the User Level".

G.2.7 Registering the Subschema to Users

Subschema names can be registered to users for Level 3 security by adding a continuation statement to the above syntax statement. Use the following syntax for the continuation statement:

```
INCLUDE ACCESS TO SUBSCHEMA subschema-name OF SCHEMA schema-name
VERSION IS version-n.
```

G.2.8 Restricting Usage Mode Access at a Global Level

To globally change the usage modes that DML/Online processes, you must register the program DBMSDMLO as outlined in the preceding subsection on Defining the Security Level.

You restrict access to specific usage modes by adding a PROGRAM DESCRIPTION IS continuation statement after the version number in the program registration statement. Then you specify the usage modes that you want DML/Online to process. For example:

```
ADD           PROGRAM NAME DBMSDMLO VERSION IS 1
MODIFY
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION IS 'SR,PR,ER'.
```

With this example, Level 1 security is established, but only Retrieval Modes are accepted from the Ready Screen. If a user requests an Update Mode (SU, PU or EU), DML/Online returns an error message.

Note: When specifying more than one usage mode, usage mode abbreviations must be separated by commas and cannot contain embedded blanks; the string must be enclosed in single quotation marks (for example: 'SR,PR,ER'). Valid usage modes are SU, SR, PU, PR, EU and ER.

G.2.9 Restricting Usage Mode Access at the User Level

To restrict access to specific usage modes at the user level, DML/Online must be installed with Level 2 or Level 3 security. See the subsection, Defining the Security Level, in this guide.

Level 2 and Level 3 security both require that a user be registered. For user registration, refer to the subsection, Adding a User Id and Password to the dictionary in this guide.

For a specific user, you restrict access to specific usage modes by adding a USER DESCRIPTION continuation statement after the password in the user id and password registration statement. For example:

```
ADD      USER NAME IS DBMS PASSWORD DMLO USER DESCRIPTION IS SR.  
MODIFY
```

In this example, user DBMS is allowed to ready areas in the Shared Retrieval mode only. If the user DBMS requests any of the other five modes (SU, PU, PR, EU or ER), DML/Online will return an error message.

Note: When specifying more than one usage mode, usage mode abbreviations must be separated by commas and cannot contain embedded blanks; the string must be enclosed in single quotation marks (for example: 'SR,PR,ER'). Valid usage modes are SU, SR, PU, PR, EU and ER.

A usage mode specified for a user overrides:

- All global usage modes specified for the program DBMSDMLO.
- The standard usage modes if the program DBMSDMLO was not registered using a PROGRAM DESCRIPTION continuation statement.

G.2.10 Central CA-IDMS Security

Remember that the centralized CA-IDMS security facility at all times is superior to any validation by CA-IDMS/DMLO. That is, if access to a dictionary or database is prohibited by the central security facility, you cannot use CA-IDMS/DMLO to bypass or override that level of security.

Appendix H. JCL Table

H.1 Overview	H-3
H.2 JCL Table by Product	H-4

H.1 Overview

The following table gives you an overview of the JCL. The components have type J in your **&dbmssrc** library.

H.2 JCL Table by Product

Product	Procedure Name	Explanation
DBAUDIT	USAEXEC	DBAUDIT utility (with demo step)
DBX	USVCVTX	Example for converting the extracted Release 3.50 file
	USVEXEC	Example of PROTOJCL to run DBX
	USVEXECP	Extract and load components of DBX (with demo, demo2, demo3 steps)
	USVEXPC	Convert extracts for IDMS PC load
	USVEXUN	Extracts and converts extract for IDMS UNIX SQL Load (with demo step)
	USVLOAD	Run the load against an existing database
	USVPCCX	Convert extract file for CA-IDMS/PC DBX load component
	USVPJCL	PROTOJCL to run DBX USVPJCL
	USVPJCLP	Print jc1 component of DBX (with demo step)
	USVPSPC	PROTOJCL to run USVPSPC
	USVPSPCP	Print specification component of DBX (with demo step)
	USVPRINT	Execute the tutorial hardcopy utility (with demo step)
	USVUJCL	Upload model JCL to DBX (no demo)
	USV2R12	For conversion of Release 3.50 to 14.1 (no demo)
DBNLYZR	USNEXEC	DBNLYZER execution procedure (with demo step)
DBREORG	USREEXEC	DBREORG execution procedure (with demo, demo2, demo3 steps)
	USRSSORT	SORT optimization procedure
DMA	XDMBJCL	Upload default DMA JCL into a user (with demo step)
	XDMBSYN	Download a user PARMFILE (with demo step)
	PROTOJCL	Example of protocol to run entered from DMA
DMLO	USDEXEC	Example of uploading a CLIST procedure
	USDPRINT	Execute the tutorial hardcopy utility (with demo step)
ENFORCER	DNLDENF	Download the Enforcer templates
	ESXAUDIT	Execute the dictionary audit utility (with demo step)
	ESXDLOD	Downloads the Enforcer's installed structure (with demo step)
	ESXPRINT	Prints the Enforcer's installed structure (with demo step)
	ESXULOD	Uploads the Enforcer's installed structure (with demo step)
JNLA	USJJEXEC	Journal Analyzer execution procedure (with demo step)
LOGA	USLEXEC	Execute Log Analyzer (with demo step)
MIGRATOR	USMEXPRT	Export extract file
	USMIMPRT	Import extract file
	USMLOAD1	Upload syntax files USMLOAD1
	USMLOAD2	Upload syntax files USMLOAD2
	USMLOAD3	Upload syntax files USMLOAD3
	USMXTRCT	Extract sample JCL (with demo)

Product	Procedure Name	Explanation
SASO	DNLDSAS	Unload the SASO SP&G text
	ESSCTLD	Install the SASO document control structure (with demo)
	ESSDLOD	Downloads the SASO document structure (with demo)
	ESSMLOD	Upload release maintenance (with demo)
	ESSMOFF	Offload release maintenance (with demo)
	ESSPRINT	Print requests for SASO documents (with demo)
	ESSRLSE	Creates a maintenance release (with demo)
	ESSTEXT	Uploads topic text structure (with demo step)
	ESSULOD	Uploads the SASO offloaded structure file (with demo)
SCHEMAP	USSEXEC1	Schema Mapper sample procedure (with demo step)
	USSEXEC2	Schema Mapper sample procedure (with demo step)
TASKA	USFECULP	Generate Task Analyzer reports
	USFEXTR	Extract data from archive log file
	USFPCULP	Culprit procedure

Appendix I. DML/Online Batch CLIST Processing Instructions

I.1 Overview	I-3
I.2 USDBCLST	I-4

I.1 Overview

A batch program has been added to DML/Online to facilitate printing, downloading, removing, and uploading CLISTS. This program is called USDBCLST and can be found in your **&dbmslod** library.

A sample procedure for this program can be found in your *&dbmssrc* library as member USDEXEC type J.

I.2 USDBCLST

The following files can be used in USDBCLST :

```
input-file      linkname=SYSIPT
report-file    linkname=REPORT   (clist report)
audit-file     linkname=AUDIT    (audit report)
download-file  linkname=DOWNLOAD (required if download requested)
upload-file   linkname=UPLOAD    (required if upload requested)
```

The file DOWNLOAD = the disk file into which the DMLO Clists will be downloaded (required if download requested).

The file UPLOAD = the disk file from which the DMLO Clists will be uploaded (required if upload requested).

Following, you will find KEYS to parameters for JCL member USDEXEC:

```
SYSIPT input file :
  COLUMNS  VARIABLE
  ----- -----
  01 - 08  User name
  09 - 16  Clist name
  17 - 17  Operation code
            P = print only
            D = download only
            X = print and download
            R = remove
  18 - 80  blank

  SYSIPT examples :
  USER0001SAMPLE  P
  USER0001SAMPLE  D
  USER0001SAMPLE  X
  USER0001SAMPLE  R
```

```
UPLOAD input file :
  COLUMNS  VARIABLE
  -----
 01 - 01 { (hex FB)  PARAMETER CARD
 02 - 09 User name
 10 - 17 Clist name
 18 - 80 Blank
or
 01 - 72 Clist line      DATA CARD
 73 - 80 Blank
or
 01 - 01 { (hex FB)  END CARD
 02 - 09 **END**
 10 - 80 Blank
```

UPLOAD examples :

```
{USER0001SAMPLE
* OBTAIN CLIST
OBTAIN FIRST %1 WITHIN %2
ENDC
{**END**
{USER0001SAMPLE2
* STORE CLIST
STORE %1
ENDC
{**END***
```

For more information see COBOL source USDBCLST.

Appendix J. TOOLSECR List

J.1 TOOLSECR J-3

J.1 TOOLSECR

MEMBER NAME TOOLSECR

FEATURE/PRODUCT: DML/Online (DMLO)

TASK: DMLO .. Invokes USDTPIF2

Programs: USDMAINO USDCLST0 USDERRS0 USDLRFS0 USDHELP
USDTPARM USDTCMND USDTKEYS USDTMSGT USDAKEY
USDCMNT0 USDPROF0 USDSSL00 USDTPIF2 USDECMD2
USDSCRQ2

Rununits: <Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USDSSL00
<Dictname>.USDSUB00.USDPROF0
<Dictname>.USDSUB00.USDCMNT0
<Dictname>.user-subschema.USDMAINO

FEATURE/PRODUCT: Masterkey

TASK: KEYS .. Invokes SSKAUSER
APPLKEY .. Invokes SSKAMEN

Programs: SSKMUSER SSKAUSER SSKAAPL SSKARTRV SSKAMAIN
SSKASUB1 SSKASUB4 SSKASUB5 SSKTDFLT SSKTPARM
SSKTMSGT SSKAMEN SSKAULS SSKADEF SSKAKEY
SSKASON SSKASOF SSKACMD SSKAPOS SSKTKEY

Rununits: <Dictname>.SSKSUB00.SSKAAPL
<Dictname>.SSKSUB00.SSKADEF
<Dictname>.SSKSUB00.SSKAMEN
<Dictname>.SSKSUB00.SSKAULS
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.SSKASUB4
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.SSKASUB5

FEATURE/PRODUCT: Dictionary Migrator Assistant (DMA)

TASK: DMA .. Invokes XDMAMEN

Programs: XDMAMEN XDMAWHA XDMAKEY XDMACFM XDMADFM
XDMASFM XDMAXFM XDMAENV XDMAST1 XDMAWTH
XDMAOVE XDMALOD XDMAOUT XDMASTO XDMAFIL
XDMAMNU XDMASPO XDMAST XDMAILOD XDMAIXIT
XDMASUB1 XDMASUB2 XDMASUB3 XDMAXCP XDMASUB
XDMACTL XDMAYES XDMAMN2 XDMTCTL XDMTNXT
XDMTKEY XDMACMD XDMTCMD XDMTMSGT

Rununits: <Dictname>.XDMSUB00.XDMAFIL

FEATURE/PRODUCT: Dictionary Module Editor (DME)

TASK: DME .. Invokes USEAMEN
DMET Runs under TCF .. Invokes USEAMEN

Programs: ADSCDME USEAMEN USEAMSL USEACAS USEADSL
USEASON USEA000 USEAADD USEARSO USEAREC
USEAAL USEASEL USEAKEY USEACMD USEACTL
USEASDL USEAPSL USEACAL USEACSL USEACDL
USEACDS USEACPS USESEND USEHESV USESLOD
USEXLOD USEAZEC USESEXEC USESPRF USEHSUS
USEMNTID USEHWRK USESWRK USESX00 USEACPY
USEACCA USESCBLD USESCLD USESALD USEHEDT
USETCMD USETCMDA USETCMDF USETCMDB USETCMDH
USETCMDW USETCMDX USETCTL USETKEY USETMSGT
USET\$\$ USETPARM

Rununits: <Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEAMEN
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEASON
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEAADD
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEAAL
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEASEL
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEASDL
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEACAL
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEACSL
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEACDL
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEACDS
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEHESV
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USESLOD
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEACPY
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USEACCA
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USESCBLD
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USESCLD

FEATURE/PRODUCT: Database Extractor (DBX)

TASK: DBX ..Invokes USVAMEN

Programs: GSDBLDPI USVAARE USVABER USVACFD USVACMD
USVACPL USVACPY USVACTL USVADCQ USVADELP
USVADML USVADSF USVADSK USVADSL USVADSLP
USVAEDJ USVAEJL USVAENT USVAFLS USVAFMM
USVAHIER USVAIDX USVAILOD USVAJUL USVAJUT
USVAKKEY USVAMEN USVANLYZ USVAPSUB USVAPUR
USVARCV USVAREC USVARETS USVARLS USVASAVJ
USVASAVS USVASET USVASJL USVASOF USVASON
USVASPC USVASPL USVASSL USVASUB USVASUBM
USVASUL USVASUT USVASVL USVAUTI USVSUB00
USVTCMD USVTCTL USVTKEY USVTMSG USVTPARM

Rununits: <Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVACPL
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVACPY
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVAEDJ
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVAEJL
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVAILOD
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVAJUL
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVAJUT
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVAPUR
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVARETS
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASAVJ
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASAVS
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASJL
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASON
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASPC
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASPL
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASSL
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASUBM
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASUL
<Dictname>.USVSUB00.USVASUT

FEATURE/PRODUCT: ADS/Alive

TASK: ADSALIVE .. Invokes USGAMEN
USGAFIX .. Invokes USGAFIX

Programs: USGAMEN USGANIM USGASON USGASOF USGAREC
USGACTL USGTCTL USGAKEY USGSINF USGA0500
USGA0550 USGTKEY USGACMD USGTCMD USGTCMR
USGTMSGT USGTPARM USGT0520 USGT0540 USGT0541
USGT0542 USGADLS USGASET USGASES USGAPL
USGALOD USGAESH USGAFIX

Rununits: <Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USGAMEN
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USGA0500
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USGADLS
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USGALOD
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.USGAESH

FEATURE/PRODUCT: ADS/Trace

TASK: ADST .. Invokes ADSORUN1

Programs: ATAAREL ATACNVRT ATPUTSCR ADST ATDMEN01
ATDGEN01 ATDSTA01 ATDREP01 ATDVIU01 ATDMOV01
ATDPRT01 ATDDL01 ATDCRE01 ATDDLQ01 ATMLOG01
ATMMEN01 ATMGEN01 ATMSTA01 ATMREP01 ATMVIU01
ATMMOV01 ATMPRT01 ATMDLR01 ATMCRE01 ATMDLQ01

FEATURE/PRODUCT: DC/Sort

TASK: TPSG .. Invokes TPSAADSG

Programs: TPSET TPSAUSR TPSAADSG TPSADME TPSAICAN
TPSAIRTY TPSMUSR TPSTKEY TPSTCMD

Rununits: <Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.TPSAUSR
<Dictname>.IDMSNWKA.TPSAADSG

FEATURE/PRODUCT: Standards Administration System Online (SASO)

TASK: SASO ..Invokes ESSAMENU

Programs: ESSAMENU ESSABENT ESSABCR ESSABSR ESSABTRN
ESSABRS ESSABSA ESSABTA ESSABKA ESSAEENT
ESSAECR ESSAESR ESSAETR ESSAERS ESSAES
ESSAETA ESSAEKA ESSAUMNU ESSAUREN ESSAURCF
ESSAURCR ESSAURSR ESSAURTR ESSAURRS ESSAUAE
ESSAUMEN ESSAUSEN ESSAUSCR ESSAUSSR ESSAUSTR
ESSAUSR S ESSAUDOC ESSAUPEN ESSAUPTL ESSAUPCA
ESSAUPCC ESSAUPTI ESSAUPVI ESSAUPRT ESSAMNT
ESSAMCF ESSAMASN ESSAMCR ESSAMSR ESSAMTR
ESSAMRS ESSAILOD ESSAISAV ESSAICPY ESSAICAN
ESSAIXIT ESSAISTA ESSASON ESSASOF ESSAREC
ESSAID ESSACTL ESSTCTL ESSAKEY ESSASRT
ESSTKEY ESSACMD ESSTCMD ESSTMSGT ESSASOCL
ESSADOCU ESSASUA ESSADUR ESSADURC ESSADUS
ESSADSS ESSAOBTD ESSADSC ESSAUSEC ESSAUSC
ESSAUSS ESSAUSR ESSAUST ESSAUCHG ESSAUCC
ESSAUCS ESSAUCR ESSAUCT ESSAUCF ESSADUD
ESSADUP ESSADUSB

Rununits: <Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAMENU
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAURCR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAURSR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAURTR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAURRS
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUAE
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUMEN
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSEN
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSCR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSSR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSTR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSR S
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUDOC
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUPEN
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUPTL
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUPCA
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUPCC
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUPTI
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUPVI
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUPRT
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAMNT
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAMCR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAMSR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAMTR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAMRS
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAILOD
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSADOCU

```
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSADUR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSADUS
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSADSS
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAOBTD
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSADSC
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSC
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSS
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUSR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUST
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUCC
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUCS
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUCR
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUCT
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSAUCF
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSADUD
<Dictname>.ESSSUB00.ESSADUP
```

FEATURE/PRODUCT: Enforcer

TASK: ENFORCER .. Invokes ESXAMEN
ENFRESET .. Invokes ESXRESET

Programs: ESXAMEN ESXAOVE ESXRESET ESXABAC ESXALOD
ESXAXIT ESXADOC ESXAEAC ESXAEFT ESXAEDC
ESXASTB ESXASTC ESXASTE ESXASTL ESXAEMC
ESXAEOFV ESXAEFI ESXAEFR ESXAUTL ESXAUEN
ESXAUES ESXAUED ESXAUEG ESXAGEN ESXAICM
ESXAUAC ESXAUCC ESXAUDC ESXAUTC ESXAUEC
ESXAURC ESXAUUC ESXAUCD ESXAUCE ESXAUCT
ESXADL ESXASL ESXUEL ESXATL ESXASON
ESXASOF ESXAREC ESXACTL ESXAKEY ESXACMD
ESXAENT ESXTCTL ESXTKEY ESXTCMD ESXTCMR
ESXTENT ESXTMSGT

FEATURE/PRODUCT: General Service

TASK: n/a

Programs: GSSCVDTI

FEATURE/PRODUCT: General IDMS

TASK: CAPS .. Invokes GSIUPLW

Programs: GSIADSC GSIALTE GSICBIT GSIDDBN GSIEHELP
GSIKEYS GSILMSG GSIPHSH GSIRELS GSISCC
GSISYMT GSITINT GSIUPLW GSICHNG GSIFND1
GSIRFND GSIRECC0 GSIRECD2 GSIRECE0 GSIRECT2
GSISPERS GSIMSGT

FEATURE/PRODUCT: General Mapper

TASK: n/a

Programs: GSMAMAPI

FEATURE/PRODUCT: General Editor

TASK: n/a

Programs: USXGABT USXGMOV USXGSNP USXGSCN USXDMIS
USXDRCM USXDRVVR USXHRES USXICMD USXIFMT
USXIMAP USXIMBX USXIMEX USXLDRVR USXOFMT
USXOMBX USXOMEX USXFNCH USXUMAN USXDSPH
USXTCON USXTCMD USXTMSG

J.1 TOOLSEC

Index

A

ADSO statements 5-6
AUX parameter for Tools 4-23

B

Batch
 verification 3-23
Bulletins, Product Information 4-6

C

CA-IDMS
 Dictionary Migrator 5-4
 Enforcer 5-4
 Server 3-25
CA-IDMS/DC SORT for Tools 4-22
CAIIJMP 1-6, 3-9
CAIIJMP member 4-9
CCI.LIB 3-25
Code
 CAIIJMP Input Parameters 3-10
 loading 1-6
 task 4-21
 Task for Tools 5-6
Commands
 PRINT 5-3
COMP procedure 3-21
Copy
 System 90 3-21
COPY statements for Tools 4-22
Customize
 installation JCL 3-9
 Tools installation JCL 4-9
Customizing JCL 1-6

D

Database Extractor JCL 4-31
DBMSMOD utility 5-8
DBX 5-7
DCMT verification 3-22
Descriptions, Tools CAIIJMP parameter 4-10
Dictionary Migrator 5-4
Dictionary Migrator JCL 4-31
Disk space requirements 2-4
DLODSECR module 3-6

DML/O

 customization for Tools 4-21
Drive requirements, tape 2-3

E

Enforcer 5-4
Examples
 sort customization for Tools 4-23
Execute
 CAIIJMP to generate install JCL 3-18
 installation JCL 3-19
 Tools CAIIJMP to generate install JCL 4-19
 Tools installation JCL 4-20

F

Files
 installation 1-3
 offload Tools installation 4-8
 offloading installation 3-8
Functions
 DBMSMOD 5-8

G

Generate
 install JCL with CAIIJMP 3-18
 Tools install JCL 4-19

I

IDD verification 3-22
Input parameters for CAIIJMP 3-9
Installation
 CA-IDMS/Server 3-25
 default JCL for Tools 4-31
 materials 1-3
 offloading files 3-8
 Tools customizing JCL 4-9
 Tools files offload 4-8
 user exits for Tools 4-25
INTBLOAD.LOADLIB 3-26

J

JCL
 CA-IDMS/Server installation 3-25
 customizing 1-6

JCL (*continued*)

- execute installation 3-19
- execute Tools CAIIJMP to generate install 4-19
- install default for Tools 4-31
- INTBLOAD.LOADLIB 3-26
- modify start-up for Tools 4-29
- offloading installation files 3-8
- Tools customizing installation 4-9

L

- Libraries
 - organization for Tools 5-12
 - recover space 4-33
- Loading code 1-6
- LOCK parameter for Tools 4-21
- Loga 5-5

M

- MAIN parameter for Tools 4-23
- Materials
 - installation 1-3
- Members
 - CAIIJMP for Tools 4-9
 - RHDCOPTF 3-5
- Modify
 - CAIIJMP 3-9
 - start-up JCL 4-29
 - SYSGEN for database tools 5-5
 - System 90 3-21
 - task code for Tools install 4-21
 - task code fro Tools 5-6
 - Tools member CAIIJMP 4-9
- Modules
 - DLODSECR 3-6
 - Tools, SYSGEN 4-21

O

- Object code 1-6
- OCD verification 3-22
- Offload
 - CCI.LIB 3-25
 - INTBLOAD.LOADLIB 3-26
 - Tools installation files 4-8
- Offload installation files 3-8
- Online
 - verification 3-22
- Options
 - Tools customization for DML/O 4-21

P

- PAM pages requirements 2-4
- Parameters
 - AUX for Tools 4-23
 - CAIIJMP 3-9
 - LOCK 4-21
 - MAIN for Tools 4-23
 - system 90 3-21
 - Tools CAIIJMP input 4-9
- Passwords 1-6
- PDEs 3-5
- PIBs 3-5, 4-6
- PRINT command 5-3
- Procedures
 - COMP 3-21
 - UNLDDEMO 5-3
- Product Information Bulletins
- Program definition elements
- Programs
 - CAIIJMP 1-6
 - XDMAXCP 5-7

R

- Recover library space 4-33
- Requirements
 - tape drive 2-3
 - Tools system 4-7
- RHDCOPTF members 3-5
- RHDCUXIT 4-25
- Rules, Tools CAIIJMP input parameter 4-10

S

- Samples
 - CAIIJMP input boot library 3-10
 - sort customization for Tools 4-23
 - Tools CAIIJMP input boot library 4-11
- Security 5-7
- Sorts for Tools 4-22
- Source code 1-6
- Statements
 - ADSO 5-6
 - COPY for Tools 4-22
- SYSGEN for Tools 5-5
- SYSGEN module 4-21
- SYSOPT output 3-18
- System
 - Tools requirements 4-7

T

Tape drive requirements 2-3
Task code 4-21
Task code for Tools 5-6
Taska 5-5

U

UNLDDEMO procedure 5-3
User exits for Tools 4-25
USFUEXTX 4-25
Utilities
 batch verification 3-23
 DBMSMOD 5-8

V

Verify
 system installation 3-22

X

XDMAXCP 5-7

